Old English Handbook
Anderson and Williams
FOREWORD

*Old English Handbook* had its inception some years ago in the desire of the senior collaborator to present to the student a volume of selections from Pre-Conquest manuscripts. The modern editor, depending too often upon preceding editors, not only had repeated well-worn selections but had perpetuated textual errors. Though believing that from the small body of Old English literature certain passages inevitably must be used in any collection representative of that literature, she also believed that examples not chosen or infrequently chosen might supersede legitimately those quoted and quoted. She hoped, further, that the Pre-Conquest scene, in all its variety, might be conveyed by placing before the student the vocabulary of the Old English layman. She had observed, also, that contemporary teaching of phonetics rarely had been extended to include, in Old English texts, the sound-history of the Modern English word, and saw the need of a chapter on phonetic changes in the language.

The junior collaborator, who shared these ideas, wished to make a book that would follow the middle path between extreme simplicity and elaborate complexity. After a tentative Table of Contents was arranged, she visited England to study manuscripts at Exeter, in the British Museum, in the Bodleian, and in Cambridge University Library. Later, the senior collaborator made a similar visit and read a number of the scripts, with particular attention to settling doubtful or disputed readings. Thenceforward, the junior collaborator was occupied with the composition of the book, the senior collaborator acting chiefly as adviser. The greater labor is that of M. A.; the responsibility involved is equally
that of B. C. W. The authors share the fortunes of the Handbook, which aims primarily to include the best selections of the more familiar material with selections less familiar, in authentic texts based on manuscripts and edited only so far as clarity and necessary information demand. The preliminary study of the grammar is of the every-day language used by the West-Saxon of average culture in the days of King Alfred. Several works which have been published since this Handbook was begun, works which are worthy contributions to the study of Old English, have not obviated, in the opinion of the collaborators, the desirability of the volume as planned.

No writer of an Old English grammar can fail to owe a debt of gratitude to the scholars whose careful studies have lightened his task. The writers of this book freely acknowledge the debt. They wish also to thank the curators of the British Museum, the Bodleian Library, and Cambridge University Library. They are grateful particularly to Sir Edwyn Hoskyns, Librarian of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; to Mr. T. Bishop, Keeper of Western Manuscripts in the Bodleian; and to Canon Maclaren, of Exeter Cathedral. Finally they wish to thank Miss Sylvia Rosen of the Comet Press, Brooklyn, for her invaluable assistance in the task of reading proof.

M. A.
B. C. W.
CONTENTS

GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION 3

PHONOLOGY 10
  Pronunciation 10
  Accentuation 13
  Sound Changes 14

INFLECTION 34
  Nouns 34
  Pronouns 58
  Adjectives 64
  Numerals 74
  Adverbs 76
  Verbs 79

SYNTAX 127
  Nouns and Pronouns 127
  Verbs 130
  Word Order 131

READER

PROSE 133

I. The West Saxon Gospels 135
   Parable of the Prodigal Son (St. Luke, XV) 136
   Parable of the Pharisee and the Publican (St. Luke, XVIII) 138

II. Old English Translation of the Heptateuch 140
   The Creation (Genesis, I) 140
   Moses and the Burning Bush (Exodus, III) 143

III. The Colloquy of Ælfric 145

IV. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle 151
   Early Invasions of the Danes, 787-901 153
   Second Danish Invasions and Conquest of England, 991-1066 159
# CONTENTS

<p>| V  | The Old English Translation of Bede                  | 167 |
| V  | Description of Britain and Ireland, I, 1            | 169 |
| V  | The Coming of the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, I, 15  | 172 |
| V  | Victories of the British over the Saxons, I, 16     | 174 |
| V  | Pope Gregory and the English Slave Boys, II, 1      | 174 |
| V  | The Conversion of Edwin, II, 12-13                  | 176 |
| V  | The Story of Caedmon, IV, 24                        | 180 |
| VI | King Alfred’s Boethius                              | 185 |
|     | Parable of the Sun and the Clouds, Chapter 6        | 187 |
|     | The Golden Age, Chapter 15                          | 187 |
|     | The Equality of Mankind, Chapter 30, Part 2         | 188 |
| VII| King Alfred’s Orosius                               | 191 |
|     | Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan                     | 192 |
| VIII| King Alfred’s Preface to Pope Gregory’s Pastoral Care | 198 |
| IX | Ælfric’s Homilies                                   | 202 |
|     | On New Year’s Day                                   | 203 |
|     | On the Invention of the Holy Cross                  | 206 |
| X  | Wulfstan’s Sermon to the English                    | 209 |
| XI | Laws of Alfred                                      | 217 |
| XII| Wills                                               | 222 |
|     | Alfred’s Will                                       | 222 |
|     | Lufa’s Will                                         | 225 |
| Poetry |                                                   | 226 |
|     | Rules of Versification                              | 227 |
| XIII| Genesis                                             | 234 |
|     | Satan’s Address to his Followers                    | 235 |
| XIV| Exodus                                              | 240 |
|     | The Marching of Pharaoh’s Host                      | 240 |
| XV | Cynewulf’s Christ                                   | 244 |
|     | Dialogue between Mary and Joseph                     | 244 |
|     | Runic Passage                                       | 246 |
| XVI| The Panther                                         | 248 |
| XVII| The Battle of Brunanburh                            | 252 |
| XVIII| The Battle of Maldon                               | 256 |
| XIX | The Wanderer                                        | 269 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th>vii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XX. The Seafarer</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI. Riddles</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Horn</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storm on Land</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storm at Sea</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mead</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Falcon</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXII. Charms</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Against a Swarm of Bees</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nine Herbs Charm</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIII. The Cotton Gnomes</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIV. Beowulf</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hrothgar's Feast and the Breca Episode</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grendel's Mere</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beowulf's Fight with the Dragon</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTES</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLOSSARY</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR
INTRODUCTION

1. Importance of the study of Old English. English is one of the richest languages in the world because from the earliest times to the present day those who have used it have not hesitated to borrow from other tongues whenever they saw the need. Despite the large number of words of foreign origin in our dictionaries, however, our language is fundamentally English, that is, Germanic, and for this reason, if for no other, a study of this native element in its earliest recorded form, Old English or Anglo-Saxon, is important.

2. Early races in Britain. The early history of Britain is a chronicle of successive invasions, and the fact that the island was ruled by five different races during these years fostered from the beginning a polyglot language. These five peoples, with the omission of the Picts, whose origin is shrouded in mystery, were the following:

(1) the Celts, who came to Britain in two great migrations, the Goidelic or Gaelic Celts, ancestors of the Irish and Scots, and the Brythonic or British Celts, whose modern descendants are the Welsh;

(2) the Romans, who arrived first under Julius Caesar in 55 B.C., had conquered the natives by A.D. 120, retained conquest until 280, and who gradually lost control after the withdrawal of the legions in 410;

(3) the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, three Germanic tribes from the lower part of the Danish peninsula, who according to tradition came in A.D. 449 under the leadership of Hengest
and Horsa to aid the British king, Vortigern, against his enemies, and who, liking the land, subjugated the Britons and remained as conquerors;

(4) the Danes who, beginning a series of invasions in the latter part of the eighth century, were subdued by King Alfred about a hundred years later, but wrested the throne from his successors, and in 1016 or 1017 established, as sovereign, King Canute;

(5) the Normans who, under William the Conqueror, conquered the English in 1066 and became thereafter the ruling race in the island.

The language of the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes after they had become completely severed from their continental home forms the basis of modern English. These Germanic tribes adopted very few of the words used by their predecessors, the Celts and the Romans, and in turn their language, receiving comparatively few additions from their Danish conquerors, was strong enough finally to emerge triumphant from its conflict with the French speech of the Normans.

3. Indo-European family of languages. English belongs to the great Indo-European or Indo-Germanic family of languages, that family which comprises most of the tongues of Europe. The position of English in the family and its relation to the other members may best be seen by tracing the various branches of the family tree. There are eight main branches of the Indo-European group, as follows:

(1) Indo-Iranian, which may be divided into two groups:
   (a) Indian, in its oldest form known as Sanskrit, the literary language of India in which the sacred books of the Brahmins, the Vedas, were composed about 1500 B.C.; in its intermediate stage represented by various literary
languages called Prakrits; and in its modern form existing in the various present-day dialects of India, among which are the Hindustani, the Bengali, and the Hindi;

(b) **Iranian**, represented in its oldest stage by two dialects, Old Persian and Avestan or Zend, the latter being the language of the Zend-Avesta, the religious books of the Zoroastrian religion; in its intermediate stage by the Middle Persian dialect called Pahlavi; and in its present stage by Modern Persian, a direct descendant of Pahlavi, and several dialects, among them Kurdish and Afghan.

(2) **Armenian**, in its oldest form the literary language of early Armenian Christians, with descendants in living dialects spoken by approximately four million people scattered today throughout the world.

(3) **Albanian**, the tongue of ancient Illyrian provinces, now spoken in modern Albania.

(4) **Greek**, the classical language of ancient Greece, and modern Greek, both dialectal and literary.

(5) **Latin** or **Italic**, including Latin and its modern descendants, the Romance languages, chief among which are Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Roumanian.

(6) **Celtic**, divided into three groups: Gaulish, the language of ancient Gaul, of which little is known; Brythonic, whose modern descendants are Welsh, Cornish, and Breton; and Gaelic, represented today by Irish, Scotch-Gaelic, and Manx.

(7) **Balto-Slavic**, to the Baltic division of which belong Lithuanian, Lettish, and Prussian, the last named of these having died out in the seventeenth century; to the Slavic division, Russian, Polish, Czechoslovakian, Slovenian, Serbo-Croatian, and Bulgarian.
(8) Germanic, which has three divisions:

(a) East Germanic, the only remnant of which is Gothic, known to us through the translation of the Bible made by Ulfilas (A.D. 311?–383);

(b) North Germanic, subdivided into West Norse, represented by Old Norwegian and Old Icelandic and their modern descendants; and East Norse, represented by Old Danish and Old Swedish and their modern descendants;

(c) West Germanic, which has five main subdivisions: Old High German, spoken originally in the southern highlands of Germany, from which modern literary German is descended; Old Saxon or Low German, spoken in the northern lowlands of Germany, from which comes modern Low German or Plattdeutsch; Old Low Franconian, the western dialect of which was the ancestor of modern Dutch and Flemish; Old Frisian, the continental dialect most closely connected with English, spoken in northwestern Germany and the provinces of the Netherlands near the coast, today the language of the Dutch province of Friesland and its adjoining islands, the German district of Oldenburg, and the west coast of Schleswig with its neighboring islands; Old English, the ancestor of our modern English.

1. Divisions of the English Language. The English language is divisible chronologically into three main parts:

(1) Old English, extending approximately from A.D. 700, the time of our earliest records, to 1100, the period from the earliest settlement to 700 being sometimes included under the distinguishing subtitle of Primitive Old English;
(2) Middle English, from 1100 to 1500;
(3) Modern English, from 1500 to the present.

These dates are of course largely arbitrary, but they are convenient to remember.

Old English, with which we are chiefly interested in this book, had four main dialects:

(1) Northumbrian, which, as its name implies, was spoken in the district north of the Humber, in the territory between that river and the river Forth, and which, as this part of the country was settled by the Angles, was an Anglian dialect;
(2) Mercian, spoken in the middle part of England, between the Thames and the Humber, and also Anglian in character;
(3) West Saxon, a Saxon dialect spoken by most of the people south of the Thames, with the exception of those who used
(4) Kentish, the dialect of the Jutes, who settled in Kent and part of Surrey.

These four dialects had their respective counterparts in Middle English, Northumbrian becoming what is known as Northern Middle English, Mercian becoming Midland, West Saxon becoming Southern, and Kentish remaining Kentish. Our present standard speech is a descendant of one form of the Midland dialect, and through it traces its source back to the Mercian. We should expect, therefore, to study Old English chiefly through the Mercian dialect; but because Mercian manuscripts are lacking, we study instead West Saxon, the dialect in which most of the Old English writings have come down to us. The reason for this predominance of West Saxon manuscripts is twofold: most of the prose was originally West Saxon; and the poetry, largely Anglian, was copied by West Saxon scribes, whose transcriptions
are extant. Two periods of West Saxon are distinguishable: the first, known as Early West Saxon (EWS), is the language of King Alfred (reigned 871–901) and his contemporaries; the second, or Late West Saxon (LWS), centers around the prose writer, Ælfric (fl. 955–1025). Early West Saxon is the standard form used in the following grammar.

5. Brief survey of Old English literature. The first great period of Old English literature lasted throughout the political supremacy of the Angles, until the West Saxons rose to power in the ninth century. Most of the great Old English poetry belongs to this Anglian period. *Beowulf*, the various so-called pagan *Elegies*, and the Christian poems grouped around the names of Cædmon and Cynewulf—all are products of these early centuries. The Angles, moreover, gave their name to the island, *Englaland*, the land of the Angles, and to the language, called *Englisc*, that is English, not only by them but also by the West Saxons.

With the decline of Anglian supremacy, however, the center of power shifted. York, the Anglian capital, from which Alcuin had gone forth to instruct the youth of Charlemagne's court, gave place in importance, both political and cultural, to Winchester, the chief city of Wessex. Alfred, after he became king, centered in his court at Winchester the revival of that learning which, as he himself tells us, had once made the English famous on the continent but had since so sadly declined. To Alfred's untiring efforts we owe a large part of the extant Old English literature, for he not only had the old poetry transcribed into West Saxon but translated, or had translated by his scholars, some of the important Latin works of early medieval times which he thought his people should know, notably Boethius's *Consolation of Philosophy*, Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*, Pope Gregory's *Pastoral Care*,
and Orosius's *History of the World*, thus creating a new body of Old English prose. The *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* was also begun under his direction.

After Alfred's time the chief name of importance is Ælfric, who lived in the last half of the tenth and first part of the eleventh centuries. His *Homilies*, *Saints' Legends*, and other religious works are also in prose, a prose which was in most of his writings so alliterative as occasionally to be classed as poetry. After Ælfric's time Old English prose gradually shades into early Middle English, and by the time the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* was receiving its last entry at Peterborough in 1154, the period of Old English was at an end.
PHONOLOGY

PRONUNCIATION

6. The Old English alphabet as it is used in this book is like that of modern English with the addition of two characters and the omission of four letters. The two added characters are þ, called “thorn,” and Ƿ, called “crossed d” or “eth,” the capital of which is Þ. They are used interchangeably in Old English manuscripts for the voiced and voiceless sounds of th. The letters j, q, v, and z are not found in Old English writing and k is used rarely.

7. The vowels in Old English were pronounced approximately as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phonetic Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a as in artistic</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å as in father</td>
<td>å:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ as in cat</td>
<td>æ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>åe as in fairy</td>
<td>æ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e as in get</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e as in obey</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i as in pick</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i as in marine</td>
<td>i:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o as in dog</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ð as in tone</td>
<td>ou</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 As the Anglo-Saxons used the British form of the Roman alphabet, most of their letters differ in appearance from those of modern English. They also borrowed two characters from the Teutonic runic alphabet, “thorn” mentioned above, and “wen” which took the place of w. In the manuscripts we also find the character þ (yok) used for g.

2 This sound was a monophthong in Old English but in Modern English the nearest approximation to it is a diphthong, as shown in the phonetics.
PHONOLOGY

Phonetic Symbol (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>as in pull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū</td>
<td>as in school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>as in German Münster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ũ</td>
<td>as in German Schüler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. The diphthongs in Old English were accented on the first element, the second element being much obscured. Their pronunciation was approximately as follows:

**Phonetic Symbol**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ea</td>
<td>æ + a as in about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēa</td>
<td>æ + a as in about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eo</td>
<td>e + o as in November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēo</td>
<td>e + o as in November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie</td>
<td>i + a as in about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īe</td>
<td>i + a as in about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>i + o as in November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īo</td>
<td>i + o as in November</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The front or palatal vowels in Old English are æ, ē, e, i, ī; the back or guttural vowels are a, ū, o, ū, ū; y, ĭ are mixed vowels. Of the diphthongs ie, īe are entirely palatal, and ea, ēa, eo, ēo, io, īo have the first element palatal.

9. The majority of consonants in Old English were pronounced as in modern English. The few exceptions are given below.

- c had the sound of k, never that of s. It had a palatal or gut-

1 ie, īe belong to Early West Saxon; in Late West Saxon they are usually written i, ī or more commonly y, ū.

2 io, īo are also Early West Saxon forms. In Late West Saxon they were usually written eo, ēo.
tural quality dependent upon its use with palatal or guttural vowels, as in cild, child, corn, corn.¹

⁠g⁠ had two sounds. Before or after a palatal vowel² or any diphthong, it was pronounced like the modern English consonantal y in yes. Examples: gescieppan, to create, gearu, ready, gieldan, to yield, mæg, kinsman, weg, way, legde, laid, dæges, genitive of day. Before or after a guttural or mixed vowel and with consonants it had the guttural pronunciation of the German g in tragen.³ Examples: gær, spear, lagu, lake, grindan, grind. This sound, often difficult for modern English-speaking people to pronounce, especially in the initial position, is approximated by the sound of g in go.

The combinations cg and ng were pronounced like dg in sedge and ng in linger. Examples: secgan, to say, hungor, hunger.

⁠f, s, and þ, ð each had two sounds, one voiced and the other voiceless. Between vowels, or between vowels and voiced consonants they were voiced, that is, they were pronounced respectively like v, z, and ð in this. Examples: giefan, to give, seolfor, silver, frēosan, to freeze, gislas, hostages, brōþor, brother, māðma, genitive plural of treasure. In all other positions they were voiceless, that is, they were pronounced respectively like f in feather, s in sun, and ð in think. Examples: fēond, enemy, lēof, dear, æfter, after, sinc, treasure, rās, rose, læst, track, þurstig, thirsty, sōð, true The pronouns ðū, ðæt, ðēs and their inflectional forms may have the voiced sound of th.

¹ Palatal c in late Old English developed into ch. Scholars who believe this change took place before 900 make ch the standard pronunciation of c before a palatal vowel, pronouncing cild, for example, as if it were child.

² Except one caused by mutation of a guttural vowel, as for example, gæst, thou goest, gēs, geese, where it had a guttural sound. (See Par. 16.)

³ Before ð, ð, late spellings of ie, ie, g is palatal.
PHONOLOGY

h in the initial position had the sound of h in modern English. Examples: hālig, holy, hātan, to call. In the medial and final positions it was pronounced like the German ch in Licht or Nacht. Examples: feohtan, to fight, Ọöhte, thought, seolh, seal.

ACCENTUATION

10. The Germanic branch of the Indo-European family of languages had as one of its chief distinguishing features the fixation of the accent which in primitive Indo-European had shifted from syllable to syllable and which continued to shift in Greek and Latin. Examples in modern English of derivatives from the Germanic and from the Greek or Latin will show the difference in these two systems of accentuation. In contrast to friend (O.E. freond), friendly, friendless, friendship, friendliness, all of which have the accent on the first syllable, we find telegraph, telegraphy, telegraphic (from the Greek) and certify, certificate, certification (from the Latin), where the accent shifts from one syllable to another.¹

In Old English the rules of accentuation are simple. Simple words, that is, words which are not compounds, have the accent on the first syllable. Examples: cræftig, crafty, heofonas, heavens, Gancode, thanked. Compound substantives (nouns, adjectives, or adverbs) have the accent on the first syllable of the first part of the compound unless it is one of the prefixes ge, be, or for.² Examples: cildhād, childhood, unriht, wrong, inweardlice, in-

¹ Many examples of Latin or Greek derivatives in English can be found in which the accent is fixed but this usage is due to the tendency in English to treat words of foreign origin as if they were native and to apply to them Germanic principles.

² The accented forms of these three prefixes, ga, bi, and fra, still survive in a few words. Examples: gamol, aged, bileofa, food, fracad, wicked.
wardly, but gebed, prayer, behāt, promise, forgifennis, forgive-
ness. Compound verbs have the accent on the root syllable, with
the prefix unaccented. Examples: adrifan, drive away, forberan,
suffer, oferstigan, rise above, onginnan, begin, tōteran, tear to
pieces, wiōsacan, strive against.

SOUND CHANGES

11. Old English vowels underwent various phonetic changes
during the development of the language. Most of these occurred
in the pre-literary period but a comparison with records in other
closely related languages, Gothic, Old High German, Old Norse,
has made it possible to trace their history in Old English. A
knowledge of them is necessary for any intelligent comprehension
of the language. The principal sound changes are given below.

CHANGE OF A TO æ AND O

12. The change of a to æ was one of the earliest of Old English
sound changes. It took place either in a closed syllable (one
ending in a consonant), or in an open syllable (one ending in a
vowel) when the vowel of the following syllable was e. When
the vowel of the following syllable was a, o, or u, a in an open syl­
labl remained a.1 Before a nasal it either remained a or became
o, the latter being more common in Early West Saxon, the former
in Late West Saxon. Examples: stæf, stæfes, stafas (staff, nomi­
native, genitive singular, nominative plural), gafol, tax, lagu,
lake; long, lang, long.

1 Exceptions to these rules may be found, as, for example, the use of a in
the imperative singular and past participle of Class VI strong verbs, where
regularly æ would be expected: bac, bake, bacen, baked. scac, shake, scacen,
shaken; and the frequent use of a rather than æ before doubled consonants
abbudisse, abbess, habban, to have.
13. The next important sound change in point of time was called breaking. The principal vowels affected by this change were æ, e, i. These, when immediately followed by l plus a consonant, r plus a consonant, h plus a consonant or a single h, became the short diphthongs, ea, eo, io.1 There is one exception to this rule. Before l plus a consonant the vowels e or i broke only when the consonant was c or h. Otherwise they remained e and i. Occasionally æ and í broke to ea and io (later written éo) before a single h or h plus a consonant.

Examples: *hældan 2 became healdan, to hold
*ærf became ǽrft, need
*mæht became meaht, might
*gefæh became gefeah, rejoiced
*berg became beorg, hill
*fehtan became feohtan, to fight
*eh became eoh, horse
*melc became meolc, milk
*selh became seolh, seal
*meltan remained meltan, to melt
*delfan remained delfan, to delve
*hird became hiord, later heord, herd
*līht became lioht, later leoht, light, not heavy
*līht became lioht, later leoht, light, bright
*næh became nēah, near

1 A similar effect may be observed in the glide sound produced by the exaggerated pronunciation of the modern English words, fair, bell, mire. This glide sound is represented in Old English by the second element of the diphthong.

2 An asterisk before a word indicates a prehistoric form.
DIPHTHONGIZATION BY INITIAL PALATAL

14. The third important sound change which took place in Old English was the conversion of certain vowels to diphthongs by the presence of an initial palatal consonant. The vowels æ, ǣ, e, were changed by the preceding initial palatals, c, g, sc, to the diphthongs ea, ẹa, ie.1

Examples: *cæster (Lat. castra) became ceaster, town
* gæt became geat, got
* scæl became sceal, shall
* cæce became céace, cheek
* gær became gēar, year
* sceæg became scēæg, sheath
* gelpan became gielpan, to boast
* sceran became scieran, to shear

That breaking belonged to an earlier period of the language than diphthongization by an initial palatal can be seen in words like georn, eager, in which the original e (*germ), which might have been affected by either of these two sound changes, has been broken to eo rather than palatalized to ie. In words like geard, yard, originally *gær, where the same result would have been reached by either process, it is better for the student to consider that the earlier change, that is, breaking, has taken place.

GEMINATION

15. Gemination or doubling is an early sound change which took place in West Germanic before Old English had become separated from the other West Germanic dialects. The letter j following any single consonant, except r, which was preceded by a

1 Occasionally a and o were also diphthongized by the palatal sc, sc, for example, scafan or sceafan, to shave, Scottas or Sceottas, Scots.
short vowel, geminated or doubled that consonant. In the Old English period the vowel was mutated (see next paragraph) and the j was dropped.

Examples: *cwæljan became cwellan, to kill
*framjan became fremman, to perform
*hæfjan became hebban, to raise
    Note f doubled became bb.
*lægjan became lecgan, to lay
    Note g doubled became cg.
*swærjan became swerian, to swear
    Note the lack of gemination because the consonant is an r.

MUTATION

16. Mutation or umlaut is the change produced in an accented radical vowel or diphthong by a sound in the following syllable. In Old English there were two kinds of mutation, that produced by an i or j and that resulting from an o (a) or u in the following syllable. The first of these, the i-mutation, is the more important and is usually referred to merely as umlaut or mutation.

At an early date, probably the seventh century, the i and j which caused the mutation in most cases either disappeared or were changed to e. The i disappeared when it was in a final position after a long syllable; otherwise it generally became e. Examples: *bōci became bēc, books; *stædi became stede, place. The j disappeared except when it followed an r preceded by a short vowel, in which case it became an i. Examples: *bandjan became bendan, to bend; *hærjan became herian, to praise.
17. List of mutations:

a (o) before nasals becomes e

* stangi > steng, pole
* drancjan > drencan, to drench
* manni > menn, men

Examples from literary Old English:

mann, man  
menn, men

lang, long  
lengra, longer  
lenghu, length

nama, name  
nemnan, to name

a becomes æ

* lärjan > læran, to teach
* brådjan > brådan, to spread
* läfjan > læfan, to leave

Examples from literary Old English:

lär, lore  
læran, to teach
bråd, broad  
brådan, to spread
läf, remnant  
læfan, to leave

æ becomes e

* slægi > slege, blow
* stæpjan > steppan, to step

Example from literary Old English:

hwæt, bold  
hwettan, to incite

o becomes e

* dohtri > dehter, dat. of daughter
* morgin > mergen, dat. of morning

Note: The mutation of o to e is very limited because by an earlier Germanic law u followed by i or j in the next syllable (or by n + a consonant) remained u,
whereas other u's changed into o's. Compare gold and gylden (O.H.G. guldin).

Examples from literary Old English:
dohtor, daughter       dat. dehter
morgen, morning        dat. mergen

ɔ becomes ǝ
* fōdjan > fēdan, to feed
* gōsi > gēs, geese

Examples from literary Old English:
fōda, food       fēdan, to feed
gōs, goose       gēs, geese
tōb, tooth       tēþ, teeth
dōn, to do       dēþ, he does

u becomes y
* þurstjan > þyrstan, to thirst
* burgi > byrig, cities
* puteus (Lat.) > pyt, pit

Examples from literary Old English:
þurst, thirst       þyrstan, to thirst
burg, city          byrig, cities
full, full          fyllan, to fill

ū becomes ȳ
* fūsjan > fūsjan, to make ready
* músi > múys, mice

Examples from literary Old English:
fūs, ready          fūsjan, to make ready
mūs, mouse          múys, mice
cū, cow             cŷ, cows, kine
brūcan, to enjoy     brūcō, he enjoys
ea becomes ie (LWS i or y)
   * healdip > hieilt, holds
   * ealdira > ieldra, older

Examples from literary Old English:
   healdan, to hold       hieilt, he holds
   eald, old             ieldra, older
   beald, bold           bieldan, to embolden

ei becomes ie (LWS i or y)
   * ge-fleamjan > geflieman, to put to flight
   * dræamjan > drýman, to rejoice

Examples from literary Old English:
   fleam, flight       geflieman, to put to flight
   dræam, joy         drýman, to rejoice
   eãe, easy          feóra, easier
   hëah, high         hiehst, highest

eo (io) becomes ie (LWS i or y)
   * weorcjan > wyrcan, to work

Examples from literary Old English:
   weorc, work       wyrcan, to work
   feorr, far        fierra, farther
   geong, young      giengra, younger
   heorte, heart     hyrtan, to hearten

eo (io) becomes ie (LWS i or y)
   * þeodjan > þydan, to submit

Examples from literary Old English:
   trëow, faith       getriewe, faithful
   cêosan, to choose  ciest, he chooses
   lëoht, light       liehtan, to shine
The change of e to i which is seen principally in the second and third persons singular present of strong verbs may be classed among the mutations, although it is a Primitive Germanic change, antedating the Old English mutation by several centuries. Examples: bricə, 3rd pers. sing. pres. of brecan, to break; stilp, 3rd pers. sing. pres. of stelan, to steal.

U-O-MUTATION

18. The second or guttural mutation took place at a later period in the development of the language, probably about 700. It occurred when the vowels a, e, i in an accented syllable followed by a single consonant were diphthongized by u or o in the following syllable to ea, eo, io, a result which, it will be seen, is the same as that obtained by breaking. This mutation was not very common in the West Saxon dialect. In fact perhaps the only instance of the mutation of a in West Saxon is in the word ealu, ale (*alo), the fairly frequent occurrences of it in poetry being due to an Anglian source, as in the words eafore, heir, heafoc, hawk, cearu, care.

Other examples of this mutation are the following: geogoə, youth, geofon, sea, heonon, hence, sweotol, clear, teola, well, niobuweard, beneath, wiotan, to know, siodu, custom.

LOSS OF MEDIAL H

19. The loss of medial h took place in Old English about 700. Between a liquid (l or r) and a vowel (usually inflectional) h disappeared, the root-vowel being lengthened in compensation.

Examples: seolh, gen. sëoles, seal; meabh, gen. mëares, horse.

20. Intervocalic h also disappeared about the same time with resultant contraction of the vowels or diphthongs preceding and following it.
Examples: * sleahan > * sľēaν > sľēan, to slay; * gefeohan > * gefēoan > gefēon, to rejoice; * wrēhan > wrion or wrēon, to cover; * hōhan > * hōan > hōn, to hang; * hēahes > * hēaes > hēas, gen. of hēah, high; * tēohan > * tēoan > tēon, to draw.

LATER CHANGES

21. Before ht and hs the diphthongs eo, io, which resulted from breaking, became ie (i, y), a change which is sometimes called palatal mutation.

Examples: cneoh, cniht, cnyht, boy; seoν (x = hs), siex, six, syx, six.

22. ea, ēa were sometimes simplified to e, ē before h, x, g, c, or after the palatals c, g, sc.

Examples: seh for seah, saw; ṡēh for ṡēah, though; feaν, hair; ēge for ēage, eye; bēcn for bēacen, sign; celf for ceaν, calf; cēs for cēas, chose; gef for geaν, gave; gēr for gēar, year; sceaν for sceaνt, shaft; sceaν for sceaν, sheep.

23. Medial g was often lost when it followed a short vowel and preceded d or n, the vowel being lengthened in compensation. This law originally was true only of words where the vowel was palatal in character, but it later became applicable also to words containing guttural vowels.

Examples: frignan, frīnan, to ask; þegn, þēn, servant; ãlegdon, ãlēdon, laid; regni, réni, to prepare.

24. A preceding w often labialized the diphthongs eo, io to u or o.

Examples: sweotol, swutol, clear; weorold, worold, world; wiota, wuta, wise man.

METATHESIS

25. Metathesis, or the shifting of a consonant from one place to another in a word, may sometimes be found in Old English.
The letter most often affected is r in combination with a nasal or s.

Examples: Gothic, āriskan, Old English, perscan, to thresh; Goth. gras, O.E. gærs, grass; Goth. brinnan, O.E. beornan, to burn; Goth. rinnan, O.E. iernan, to run.

Sc is also metathesized to cs, usually written x, both forms occurring in Old English.

Examples: fisc, fix, fish; ascian, acsian, axian, to ask.

It is to be noted that not infrequently metathesis has again occurred in modern English, and the present form is similar to the original.

OTHER SOUND CHANGES

26. A few other sound changes of importance, notably Grada­tion or Ablaut and Grammatical Change, will be described in connection with the verbs where they may best be seen in operation.

27. For the student's convenience in identifying the principal sound changes, another grouping is given below:

- ea is the result of breaking of æ
  - diphthongization of æ by initial palatal
  - u-o-mutation of a
- ǣa is the result of diphthongization of Æ by initial palatal
- eo (io) is the result of breaking of e or i
  - u-o-mutation of e or i
- ie (i, y) is the result of diphthongization of e by initial palatal
  - mutation of any short diphthong
- y is also the result of mutation of u
- ie (i, y) is the result of mutation of any long diphthong
- y is also the result of mutation of ū
- ā may be mutation of ā
- e may be mutation of æ, a before nasal, or o
- ē may be mutation of ē
CHANGES FROM OLD ENGLISH TO MODERN ENGLISH

The accompanying diagram, which is adapted from the modern English vowel triangle used by phoneticians, indicates the approximate positions of the O.E. vowels. It will be remembered that in the divisions, front, mixed, and back, the vowels are classed according to that part of the tongue most raised, and that in the divisions, close, half-close, half-open, and open, they are classed according to the height to which the tongue is raised. The student should keep in mind, further, that as the period of Old English approached that of Middle English, terminal vowels and certain vowels of unaccented syllables more and more acquired the indefinite a sound, represented (in Chaucer's works, for example) by the letter e.

\[ \text{Diagram of Old English Vowel Triangle} \]

**I. Vowels**

28. a (a), usually unchanged in writing, is the source of ei, æ, ɛ, ou, e.
Illustrations:

(1) a > ei  lafián > lave; wadan > wade; magan > may;
   wanian > wane.
(2) a > æ  habban > have; hand > hand; can > can.
(3) a > e  faran > fare.
(4) a > ou  wald > wold.
(5) a > e  manig > many.

a + w, g is the source of o:. For example, dragan > draw;
   haga > haw.

ä (a:) is the source of ou, written o, oa, oe; of e:, written au,
   oa; of a; of ei; of u:, written o; of ^, written o.

Illustrations:

(1) a : > ou  läd > load, lode; bán > bone; hål > whole;
   häm > home; gä > go; äp > oath; räd > road,
   rode; båt > boat; fág > foe; tå > toe; wå >
   woe.
(2) a : > o:  bråd > broad; äht > aught; lår > [wed]lock.
   a: followed by r is the source of the diphthong o:æ.

   här > hoary; lår > lore; sår > sore.
(3) a : > a  läst > last; äscian > ask.¹
(4) a : > u  håd > hood.
(5) a : > u:  hwå > who; twå > two.
(6) a : > ^  ån > one.

æ (æ), usually unchanged phonetically, but written a, is
the source also of ei, e.

Illustrations:

(1) æ > æ  æsc > ash; æt > at; bæþ > bath; cræftig >
   crafty; fæst > fast.
¹ American pronunciation. The British remains la:st, etc.
(2) æ > ei  
  day > daeg; late > læt; main > mægen; waken > wæcnan.

(3) æ > e  
  rest > ræst; guest > gaest.

æ also becomes ou in cwan > quoth.

æ (e) usually became i:, written ea, ee, ie; but is the source, also, of ea, ei, e.

Illustrations:

(1) e > i:  
  weed > wæd; greedy > grædig; deed > dæd; meal > mæl; heathen > hæðen; bier > bær.

(2) e > eo  
  ere > ær; where > hwær; there > þær.

(3) e > ei  
  fey > fæge; grey > græg; waver > wæfre; wain > wæn.

(4) e > e  
  ever > æfre; weapon > wæpen; any > ænig; errand > ærende; them > þæm; less > læs; let > lætan.

e (e) usually remained e, written e, but was also the source of ü, written u; of ei, written a, ai, ea; and of i:.

Illustrations:

(1) e > e  
  fen > fæn; bed > bed; bench > benc; better > beter; den > denn; end > ende; ferry > ferian; melt > meltan; send > sendan.

(2) e > ü  
  burst > berstan.

(3) e > ei  
  thane > þegn; hate > hete; say > secgan; sail > segl; way > weg.

(4) e > æ  
  bear > beran; lair > leger; mare > mere.

(5) e > i:  
  mead > medo; steal > stelan.

æ (ei) usually became i:, written ea, ee, but in a few words remained ei, written ai.
Illustrations:

(1) ei > i:  
- cène > keen; cwên > queen; dêman > deem;  
- fêdan > feed; hêdan > heed; mē > me;  
- mêtan > meet; þê > thee; wêrig > weary.

(2) ei > ei  
- gêm > again; twêgen > twain.

I (i) usually remained i, but also became ai, written i.

Illustrations:

(1) i > i  
- biter > bitter; clif > cliff; disc > dish; finger > finger; onginnan > begin; gif > if;  
- him > him; scip > ship; smip > smith.

(2) i > ai  
- bindan > bind; ēniht > knight; licgan > lie;  
- milde > mild; niht > night; riht > right;  
- fliht > flight; mihtig > mighty.

I (i:) became ai, i, written i (occasionally y), e, ju, written ew.

Illustrations:

(1) i: > ai  
- min > mine; bidan > bide; fif > five; glidan > glide; gripan > gripe; ìsig > icy; lif > life;  
- mil > mile; wif > wife.

(2) i: > i  
- lic > lych; fiftig > fifty; rice > rich; wic > wick.

(3) i: > e  
- git > yet. e becomes 3: in thirty < þirtig,  
through the influence of ante-vocalic r.

(4) i: > ju  
- niwe > new.

O (ɔ) remained ɔ or was lengthened to ɔ:, written o, au, ou,  
and is the source of ou, æ, ɔ:, ei.

Illustrations:

(1) ɔ > ɔ or ɔ:  
- storm > storm; dohtor > daughter; for > for;  
- folgian > follow; God > God; horn > horn;
GRAMMAR

hors > horse; long > long; norþ > north; oft > oft; bohte > bought; ford > ford; forþ > forth.

(2) ɔ > ou bodian > bode; dol > dolt; folc > folk; open > open; gold > gold; holt > holt.

(3) ɔ > æ brond > brand; hond > hand; stondan > stand; onspoonnan > unspan. (See a > æ)

(4) ɔ > ɔ: dorste > durst; word > word; morþor > murder; worold > world.

(5) ɔ > ei gomen > game. (See a > ei)

ō (ou) remained ou, written o, oo; is the source of u:, u, ʌ and ɔ; written o, oo, ou.

Illustrations:

(1) ou > ou grōwan > grow; flor > floor.
(2) ou > u: cōl > cool; dōn > do; bōt > boot; dōm > doom; hōf > roof.
(3) ou > u fōt > foot; gōd > good; lōcian > look.
(4) ou > ʌ brōþor > brother; flōd > flood; glōf > glove.
(5) ou > ɔ: brōhte > brought; sōhte > sought; þōhte > thought.

u (u) remained u, written u, o, and is the source of u:, ou, ʌ, and of au, written ou.

Illustrations:

(1) u > u ful > full; wulf > wolf.
(2) u > u: wund > wound (a hurt or cut).
(3) u > ou murnan > mourn.
(4) u > ʌ lufian > love; cuman > come; sum > some; under > under; þus > thus; wundor > wonder.
(5) $u > au$  
$\text{sund} > \text{sound}; \quad \text{hund} > \text{hound}; \quad \text{grund} > \text{ground}; \quad \text{wunden} > \text{wound}.$

$a (u:) \text{ remained } u:, \text{ written } oo, \text{ ou, and is the source of } u \text{ (rarely), } \& , \text{ au, o.}$

Illustrations:

1. $u: > u: \quad \text{rum} > \text{room}; \quad \text{uncup} > \text{uncouth}.$
2. $u: > u \quad \text{brucan} > \text{brook}.$
3. $u: > A \quad \text{buton} > \text{but}; \quad \text{scufan} > \text{shove}; \quad \text{us} > \text{us}; \quad \text{tux} > \text{tusk}.$
4. $u: > au \quad \text{ut} > \text{out}; \quad \text{hus} > \text{house}; \quad \text{bugan} > \text{bow}; \quad \text{mus} > \text{mouse}; \quad \text{hu} > \text{how}; \quad \text{nus} > \text{now}; \quad \text{burr} > \text{bower}.$
5. $u: > o \quad \text{beulcan} > \text{lock}.$

$y (y), \text{ nearly identical with i (i), early became interchangeable with i in writing and is the source of the same sounds, as well as of i:}$

Illustrations:

1. $y > i \quad \text{cyning} > \text{king}; \quad \text{cyssan} > \text{kiss}; \quad \text{dynnman} > \text{din}.$
2. $y > 3: \quad \text{gyrdan} > \text{gird}; \quad \text{wyrcan} > \text{work}.$
3. $y > i: \quad \text{gyldan} > \text{yield}; \quad \text{scyld} > \text{shield}; \quad \text{wyrd} > \text{weird}; \quad \text{yfel} > \text{evil}.$

$y (y:) \text{, nearly identical with i:, became ai (or ai:e), became i: (or i:e), written ea, ee, or became i}.$

Illustrations:

1. $y: > ai \quad \text{lyas} > \text{lice}; \quad \text{mys} > \text{mice}.$
2. $y: > i: \quad \text{styl} > \text{steel}; \quad \text{nyd} > \text{need}.$
3. $y: > i \quad \text{lytel} > \text{little}.$
II. Diphthongs

29. ea (æœ) became æ, a, o, ei, e.

Illustrations:

(1) æœ > æ
    * fealu > fallow; nearo > narrow; sleæc > slack; weaxan > wax; sceal > shall.

(2) æœ > a:
    * scearp > sharp; earm > arm; geard > yard; hearm > harm; hearp > harp; eart > art; healf > half.

(3) æœ > o:
    * eal(l) > all; feallan > fall; sealt > salt; sweatr > swart; weal(l) > wall; weard > ward.

(4) æœ > ei
    * bealo > bale; eahta > eight; ealo > ale; gesceap > shape; sceadu > shade.

(5) æœ > e
    * weallend > welling; ceaster > chester.

eœ (œœ) became i, e, ai, ou, ju.

Illustrations:

(1) eœ > i:
    * bæacen > beacon; bæatan > beat; bëam > beam; cëap > cheap; dëam > dream; ëac > eke; gëar > year; sëap > seethe; stëap > steep.

(2) eœ > ei
    * slëan > slay.

(3) eœ > e
    * bæcnian > beckon; dëad > dead; hëafod > head; ongëan > against; rëad > red; brëatian > threaten.

(4) eœ > ai
    * ëage > eye; hëah > high; nëah > nigh.

(5) eœ > ou
    * þeah > though; scæwian > show; wëa > woe.

(6) eœ > ju
    * fëa > few; hëawan > hew; þeaw > thew.

eo (œo) became 3, e, i, ai, ou.
Illustrations:

(1) **eo > 3**: eorl > earl; eorp > earth; ceorl > churl; weorc > work; leornian > learn.
(2) **eo > e**: heofon > heaven; seofon > seven; geolo > yellow.
(3) **eo > i**: hleonian > lean; feoh > fee.
(4) **eo > ai**: beorht > bright; feohte > fight.
(5) **eo > a**: feor > far; deorc > dark; heorte > heart; heorp > hearth; ceorfan > carve.
(6) **eo > ou**: heolster > holster; seonian > sew.

éo (eio) became i: (or i:e), i, e, ai, u:.

Illustrations:

(1) **eio > i**: leof > lief; fēond > fiend; bēo > be; séon > see; hlēo > lee.
(1. b.) drēorig > dreary; bēor > beer.
(2) **eio > i**: sēoc > sick.
(3) **eio > e**: hēold > held; brēost > breast; déofol > devil; brēond > friend.
(4) **eio > ai**: lēoht > light.
(5) **eio > u**: trēow > tru(th); scēotend > shooting; grēow > grew; cēosan > choose.

ie (ia), see i, y; for example — hierde, hirde, hyrde > herder.

le (i:e), see i, y; for example — hieran, hyran > hear.

io (io), see eo, i, y; for example — giofan, geofan > give; giong, geong > young; nioþor, niper > nether.

lēo (i:o), see ðo, i, y; for example — lioht, leocht > light; cio-san, cēosan > choose; dīope, dēope > deep(ly); riōdan, rīdan > ride.
III. Consonants

30. Consonants, in general, have remained as they were. It has been observed above that th in Old English was represented by þ (thorn) or ð (eth), and that g, whether palatal or guttural, was represented by ȝ (yok).

ȝ, guttural, remains guttural, initially, when followed by one of the letters a, o, u, or a consonant. Illustrations: ga > go; gāst > ghost; God > God; gīdan > glide; grētan > greet; grīdan > grind. It first became w, usually, in the middle of a word, and the w was then vocalized. Illustrations: folgian > follow; haga > haw; galga > gallows; morgen > morrow. It may remain guttural at the end or, after becoming w or h, be vocalized; note, for example, sorg, sorh > sorrow; burg, burh > burgh or borough.

ȝ, palatal, is the source of consonantal y at the beginning of a word. Illustrations: geard > yard; geogop > youth; gī > yet (but the sound may disappear altogether: gif > if). It is the source of vowel y, or i, at the end of a word: hālig > holy; bysig > busy (and may disappear altogether: grāg > gray; weg > way). Medially, the sound is often lost. Illustrations: mægen > main; þegn > thane; segl > sail; twēgen > twain.

ȝ, guttural, written c, remains guttural, initially, when followed by one of the letters a, o, u, or a consonant. Illustrations: can > can; cōl > cool; cкраf > craft; cuman > come.

C, written k, is (1) guttural: cēne > keen; cyssan > kiss; cyning > king; cwēn > queen (where qu is the equivalent of kw); (2) the sound may disappear altogether: cnāwan > know.

C, guttural, at the end (1) remains guttural: ēac > eke; hafoc >

1 The symbol remains; the consonantal sound is lost, only the diphthong representing it.
hawk; loc > folk; lic > like; (2) becomes tj: hwilc > which; swylc > such; spræc > speech; lic > lych. Medially, c, guttural, remains guttural: bæcen > beacon; draca > drake.

C, palatal, is the source of tj, written ch or tch. Illustrations: cild > child; læce > leech; rice > rich; ceorl > churl.
INFLECTION

NOUNS

31. Old English nouns, like those of modern German, have three
genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter; two numbers, singular
and plural; and four cases, nominative, genitive, dative, and ac­
cusative. A fifth case, the instrumental, corresponding to the
Latin ablative, originally existed but it early took the same form
as the dative. Remains of it may be seen in the singular masculine
and neuter of strong adjectives and of certain pronouns.

There are two main classes of nouns, strong and weak, the
former including those nouns whose stem originally ended in a
vowel, the latter those whose stem originally ended in n. A few
minor consonantal declensions also exist.

A. STRONG DECISIONS

MASULINES

I. a-declension or -as plurals

32. This is called the a-declension because the stem of the noun
originally ended in -a, which however was lost in historic Old
English; e.g., *gāra, O.E. gār, spear. This group, which corre­
sponds to the Latin o or second declension (hortus, horti), contains
most of the masculine nouns in Old English ending in a consonant
or in e and is the most important of all the declensions. As the
nominative plural is the case in which gender is most easily distin­
guishable in Old English, these nouns are often called, because of
the ending of that case, -as plurals. There are three subdivisions
of this declension: a-stems, ja-stems, and wa-stems.
(a) a-stems

33. The nouns belonging to this group all end in a consonant.

(1) monosyllables

Paradigm: gar, spear; stæf, staff; seolh, seal; eoh, horse.

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gær</td>
<td>stæf</td>
<td>gærē</td>
<td>stæf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēolh</td>
<td>sēolēs</td>
<td>sēolē</td>
<td>sēolh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eoh</td>
<td>ēos</td>
<td>ēo</td>
<td>eoh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gāras</td>
<td>stafas</td>
<td>gāram</td>
<td>stafas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēolas</td>
<td>sēola</td>
<td>sēolum</td>
<td>sēolas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēos</td>
<td>ēona</td>
<td>ēom (ēoum)</td>
<td>ēos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It will be noted that the accusative case, both singular and plural, is like the nominative.

34. Like gær are declined the following: ād, fire, æsc, ash, spear, āp, oatā, bēag, ring, beorn, man, būr, bower, camp, battle from Lat. campus, cēap, bargain, ceorl, churl, cnyht, knight, disc, dish from Lat. discus, dōm, doom, eorl, earl, flōd, flood, forst, frost, gāst, ghost, hām, home, helm, helmet, heorō, hearth, hlāf, loaf, hring, ring, hund, hound, mōr, moor, munt, mountain from Lat. mons, orc, flagon from Lat. orca, urceus, port, port from Lat. portus, prēost, priest from Lat. presbyter, rāp, rope, rond, shield, scealc, servant. sceaf, shaft, scop, bard, scyld, shield, smip, smith, sōn, sound from Lat sonus, stōl, stool, swān, swain, tūn, town, wēn, wain, wulf, wolf, and many others.
35. Like stæf are declined dæg, day, hwæl, whale, pæð, path. For the change in root vowel see Paragraph 12.1

36. Like seolh are declined ealh, temple, eolh, elk, feorh, life, mearh, horse. For the loss of h see Paragraph 19.

37. Like eoh are declined scōh, shoe, slōh, slough. The genitive plural of these is taken from the weak declension. Eoh may also be neuter.

(2) DISSYLLABLES

38. Paradigms: hláfard, lord; ðéoden, prince; nægel, nail; hamor, hammer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Acc. hláfard</th>
<th>ðéoden</th>
<th>nægel</th>
<th>hamor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hláfordes</td>
<td>ðéodnes</td>
<td>nægles</td>
<td>hamores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hláforde</td>
<td>ðéodne</td>
<td>nægle</td>
<td>hamore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Acc. hláfordas</th>
<th>ðéodnas</th>
<th>næglas</th>
<th>hamoras</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hláforda</td>
<td>ðéodna</td>
<td>nægla</td>
<td>hamora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hláfordum</td>
<td>ðéodnum</td>
<td>nægnum</td>
<td>hamorum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39. Like hláfard are declined dissyllables ending in -að, -oð, -ðóm, -els, -hād, -ing, as, e.g., fiscað, fishing, huntoð, hunting, cynedōm, kingdom, fætels, vessel (also neuter), cildhād, childhood, cyning, king, dēorling, darling.

40. Nouns ending in -el, -en, -er, -ol, -on, -or usually contract when the first syllable is long, as in ðéoden; when the first syllable is short they sometimes contract as in nægel, and sometimes keep

1 Mæg, kinsman, also conforms to this declension; æ + g in an open syllable followed by a, e, or u in the next syllable reverts to the original a (māgas). A newer form, mægas, also exists.
INFLECTION 37

the vowel of the second syllable as in hamor. A long syllable is one containing a long vowel or diphthong, or a short vowel or diphthong followed by two or more consonants; a short syllable is one with a short vowel or diphthong and one or no following consonants.

41. Like þéoden are declined æppel, apple, cyrtel, kirtle, engel, angel, ēfel, home, fengel, prince, gīsel, hostage, morgen, morning (dat. mergen), bolster, pillow, brember, bramble, finger, fīnger, ðer, shore, ancor, anchor from Lat. ancora, ealdor, chief, etc.

42. Like nægel are declined hægel, hail, þegen, thane, fugol, bird, þunor, thunder.

43. Like hamor are declined cradol, cradle, pistol, epistle from Lat. epistola, sadol, saddle, canon, canon from Lat. canon, heofon, heaven.

(b) ja-stems

44. Nouns in this group are so-called because the original suffix was -ja. This j caused mutation of the radical vowel if it was a vowel capable of mutation, and gemination of the final consonant (except r) if single and preceded by a short vowel. The j remained as an i in oblique cases only when the consonant was r, as in here conjugated below. Nouns of this group ending in e, with the exception of here, had originally long radical syllables; those ending in a consonant have geminated syllables which were originally short. They are all declined like the a-stems.

45. Paradigms: mēce, sword; bridd, young bird; here, army; writere, writer.

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Acc. mēce</th>
<th>bridd</th>
<th>here</th>
<th>writeres</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mēces</td>
<td>briddles</td>
<td>heriges, heries, herges</td>
<td>writeres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mēce</td>
<td>bridde</td>
<td>herige, herie, herge</td>
<td>writeres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plural
Nom. Acc. mēcas briddas herigas, herias, hergas writeras
Gen. mēca bridda heriga, heria, herga writera
Dat. mēcum briddum herigum, herium, hergum writerum

46. Like mēce (original long stem and no gemination) are declined ende, end, esne, servant, hierde, shepherd, hwæte, wheat, etc.

47. Like bridd (original short stem and gemination) are declined hlynn, noise, hrycg, ridge, pytt, pit, secg, man, wecg, wedge, etc.

48. Here is the only noun with an r in the root.

49. Like writera are declined several derivatives in -ere, nouns of agency: bōcere, scholar, fiscere, fisher, fugelere, Fowler, hearpere, harper, sǣdere, sower, etc.

(c) wa-stems

50. The few nouns of this group had a stem originally ending in -wa. This w became u in the nominative and accusative singular of words with a short root syllable ending in a consonant. Otherwise the declension of this group is like that of the a-stems.

51. Paradigms: bearu, grove; þēaw, custom.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bearwes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bearwe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The inflected forms of the short-stemmed nouns sometimes have a u before the w, as bearuwes, etc.

52. Other wa-stems are dēaw, dew (also neuter), hlēw, mound, hrā(w), corpse, snā(w), snow, þēo(w), servant.
II. i-declension or -e plurals

53. This declension, corresponding to the Latin i-declension (princeps, principis), is distinguished by mutation of the radical vowel caused by the original i of the stem. The i was dropped after a long root syllable and remained as e after a short root syllable. Most of the nouns of this declension have taken the endings of the a-declension; the only distinguishing mark remaining is the e in the nominative and accusative plural which a few words, chiefly names of peoples, still retain.

54. Paradigms: sele, hall; dæl, part.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc. sele</td>
<td>dæl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. seles</td>
<td>dæles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. sele</td>
<td>dæle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

55. The nominative-accusative plural ending e is found in the words ielde, men, elfe, elves, lēode, peoples, Dene, Danes, Engle, Angles, Mierce (gen. Miercna), Mercians, Nordymbre, Northumbrians, Seaxe (gen. Seaxna), Saxons, and compounds in -ware, as ceasterware, city-dwellers.

56. Other short-stemmed nouns like sele are bite, bite, bryne, burning, bye, son, byrele, cup-bearer, cyme, coming, ele, oil, gryre, terror, hryre, fall, hyge, mind, slege, blow, stede, place, pylle, orator, white, beauty, etc., and abstractions in -scape, like frēondscipe, friendship, gebēorscipe, banquet.

57. Other long-stemmed nouns like dæl, which are declined like those of the a-declension but have a mutated radical vowel are drinc, drink, feng, grasp, flyht, flight, fyrst, time, giest, guest, lyft, air, steng, pole, swēg, sound, wyrm, worm, dragon, etc.
III. u-declension

58. The u-declension, corresponding to the Latin u-declension (fructus, fructus), originally contained masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns, but all except one neuter, the now indeclinable fela, much, had left the declension before the period of historic Old English and most of the masculines and feminines have also gone over into the a and o declensions. In the few remaining nouns, u is present in the nominative and accusative singular after a short syllable and is lost after a long syllable.

59. Paradigms: wudu, wood; feld, field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc. wudu</td>
<td>feld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. wuda</td>
<td>felda, -es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. wuda</td>
<td>felda, -e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

wuda, -u  felda, -as  wuda  felda
wuda  felda
wudum  feldum

60. Like wudu is declined sunu, son. Heoru, sword, lagu, lake, mago, kinsman, medu, mead, sidu, custom, show traces of the declension in a few surviving forms.

61. Other nouns like feld, with traces of this declension and parallel forms in the a-declension, are eard, country, ford, ford, hād, rank, hearg, temple, weald, forest, winter, winter, sumor, summer.

NEUTERS

1. a-declension; -u or unchanged plurals

(a) a-stems

(1) monosyllables

62. With one difference, the neuters in this group are declined like the masculines. The nominative-accusative plural, instead
of ending in -as, ends in -u, this u being dropped after a long syllable. The nominative and accusative plural of long-syllabed words are therefore the same as the nominative and accusative singular.

63. Paradigms: clif, cliff; baē, bath; wif, wife; sweord, sword; feorh, life.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>clif</td>
<td>baē</td>
<td>wif</td>
<td>sweord</td>
<td>feorh</td>
<td>clifes</td>
<td>baēes</td>
<td>wifes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>clifu</td>
<td>baēu</td>
<td>wif</td>
<td>sweord</td>
<td>feorh</td>
<td>clifa</td>
<td>baēa</td>
<td>wifa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64. Like clif are declined other neuters with a short syllable: brim, sea, hlipt, cliff, hof, court, lim, limb, scip, ship, spor, track, etc., and also monosyllables with a prefix, as bebod, command, genip, mist, gewrit, writing.

65. Like baē are declined cræt, cart, dæl, dale, fæt, vat, gæft, grave, scræf, cavern, stæf, shore, swæf, track, etc. For the change in vowel in these words see Paragraph 12 and compare the declension of the masculine a-stem, stæf.

66. Like wif and sweord, representative of the two types of long syllable, are declined many nouns: bān, bone, bearn, child, bill, sword, bold, building, bord, shield, brēost, breast, cild, child, dēor, deer, folc, folk, gēar, year, gielp, boast, hilt, hilt, holt, wood, hord, hoard, hors, horse, hūs, house, hwēol, wheel, lāc, gift, land, land, lēaf, leaf, líc, body, lif, life, nēat, cattle, ord, point, rēaf, dress, scēap,
sheep, scrín, shrine from Lat. scrinium, spell, tale, swín, swine, bing, thing, win, wine from Lat. vinum, word, word, and others.

67. Like feorh, with the loss of medial h, are declined a few other words: feoh, cattle, holh, hollow, wöh, evil, etc.

(2) DISSYLLABLES

68. Paradigms: wundor, wonder; gafol, tribute

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc.</td>
<td>wundor</td>
<td>gafol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>wundres</td>
<td>gafoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>wundre</td>
<td>gafole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After a long radical syllable the middle vowel is usually syncopated in inflection, as in wundor; after a short radical syllable the middle vowel generally remains, as in gafol. The u of the nominative-accusative plural ending usually is present when the radical syllable is long and is dropped when it is short. Neither of these rules, however, is invariable.

69. Like wundor, with a long radical syllable, are declined symbel, feast, béacen, beacon, ellen, strength, fácen, deceit, tácen, token, wæpen, weapon, wolcen, cloud, mynster, monastery, tiber, sacrifice, hæafod, head, déofol, devil, tungol, star, áttor, poison, saldor, life, morpor, murder, seolfor, silver, wuldor, glory.

70. Like gafol, with a short radical syllable, are declined gamen, sport, mægen, might, wæter, water.

(b) ja-stems

71. These have the same peculiarities as the masculine ja-stems

Paradigms: flet(t), floor; wæge, cup; wèsten, waste.
INFLECTION

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flet(t)</td>
<td>flettes</td>
<td>flette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wæge</td>
<td>wæges</td>
<td>wæge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wwesten</td>
<td>wwesten(n)es</td>
<td>wwesten(n)e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flet(t)</td>
<td>fletta</td>
<td>fletum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wægu</td>
<td>wæga</td>
<td>wægum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wwesten(n)u</td>
<td>wwesten(n)a</td>
<td>wwesten(n)um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

72. Like flet(t), with an original short stem and gemination, are declined bed(d), bed, cyn(n), kin, den(n), den, fen(n), fen, wed(d), pledge. These may have a single final consonant in the nominative and accusative singular and plural.

73. Like wæge, with an original long stem and no gemination, are declined all neuter nouns ending in -e with the exception of eage and ðare. (See Paragraph 123.) These include a large number with the prefix ge-. Examples are ðarende, errand, rice, kingdom, sigle, jewel, wite, punishment, yrfe, heritage, yrre, anger, getimbre, structure, geþode, language, geþinge, agreement, gewâde, armor, etc

74. Like wwesten are declined fæsten, fastness, bærent(t), arson, fyrwet(t), curiosity, and a few others. The double consonant may or may not be present in the nominative and accusative singular and is often simplified in the inflectional forms.

(c) wa-stems

75. Paradigms: bealu, evil; cnéo, knee.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bealu, -o</td>
<td>bealwes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cnéo(w)</td>
<td>cnéo(wes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bealu, -o</td>
<td>bealwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cnéo(w)</td>
<td>cnéo(owa)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
76. These have the same peculiarities as the masculine wa-stems. The plural cnēowu is a late form by analogy with bealu. Other words in this small group are mealu, meal, searu, device, teoru, tar, declined like bealu; and hlēo(w), covering, strēa(w), straw, trēo(w), tree, declined like cnēo(w).

II. i-declension

77. The neuter nouns of this declension have completely gone over to the a-declension. The mutated radical vowel is the only distinguishing feature.

78. Paradigms: sife, sieve; lān, loan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sife</td>
<td>lān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sifes</td>
<td>lānes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sifes</td>
<td>sifum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sife</td>
<td>lāne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

79. Like sife, with a short root syllable and the endings e in the nominative-accusative singular and u in the nominative-accusative plural, are declined ofdāle, declivity, orlege, fate, spere, spear.

80. Like lān, with a long root syllable and no ending in the plural, are declined flæsc, flesh, hāl, health, hilt, hilt.

Feminines

I. o-declension or -a plurals

81. This declension is so-called because the stem of the nouns originally ended in o. It corresponds to the Latin a or first declension (porta, portae), and is composed entirely of feminine nouns. There are three subdivisions, o-stems, jo-stems, and wo-stems.
(a) o-stems

82. Nouns with a short radical syllable keep the original ending -u in the nominative singular; those with a long syllable drop it.

Paradigms: cearu, care; gūð, battle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. cearu</td>
<td>gūð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ceare</td>
<td>gūðe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ceare</td>
<td>gūðe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ceare</td>
<td>gūðe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The original ending of the genitive plural was -a; the ending -ena, often found, was taken from the weak declension.

83. Like cearu, with a short radical syllable, are declined andswaru, answer, cwalu, murder, faru, journey, giefu, gifl, lufu, love, nafu, nave, racu, narrative, sacu, persecution, sceamu, shame, scolu, shoal, swaðu, track, wracu, revenge, wraþu, support, etc.

84. Like gūð, with a long radical syllable, are declined ár, favor, bót, remedy, dün, down, eaxl, shoulder, folm, hand, fréod, peace, glöf, glove, græp, grasp, heall, hall, healf, half, hwil, while, låd, way, láf, remnant, lår, lóre, lind, shield, mearc, mark, méð, meed, råd, ride, reord, speech, run, rune, sorr, sorrow, spræc, speech, stig, path, strát, street from Lat. strata, þearf, need, þéod, nation, wund, wound, and many others.

Dissyllables

85. Paradigms: feþer, feather; hlædder, ladder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. feþer</td>
<td>hlædder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. feþere</td>
<td>hlæddre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. feþere</td>
<td>hlæddre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. feþere</td>
<td>hlæddre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The middle vowel is syncopated in inflection when the radical syllable is long, as in hlædder; it is retained when the radical syllable is short, as in feþer.

86. Like feþer are declined bysen, example, fetor, fetjer, fyren, sin, sylen, gift.

87. Like hlædder are declined ceaster, city from Lat. castra. fröfor, comfort, sāwol, soul.

(b) jo-stems

88. These correspond to the masculine and neuter ja-stems and are distinguished by a mutated root vowel and by gemination of the final consonant if the radical syllable was short. The inflectional endings are the same as those of the o-stems.

89. Paradigms: benn, wound; ræst, rest.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ben(n)</td>
<td>ræst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. benne</td>
<td>ræste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. benne</td>
<td>ræste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. benne</td>
<td>ræste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

90. Like benn, with geminated consonant, are declined brycg, bridge, criib, crib, ecg, edge, hell, hell, nytt, use, sibb, kinship, synn, sin, wynn, joy.

91. Like ræst, with a long syllable, are declined hild, battle, milts, kindness, wylf, she-wolf, yð, wave.

POLYSYLLABLES

92. These nouns end in -en, -es, -nes; a great majority of them are abstract in meaning. Gemination of the final consonant occurs.
INFLECTION

93. Paradigms: gyden, goddess; swētnes, sweetness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>gyden</td>
<td>swētnes, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>gydenne</td>
<td>swētnesse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>gydenne</td>
<td>swētnesse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>gydenne</td>
<td>swētnesse, -e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

93. Paradigms: gyden, goddess; swētnes, sweetness.

94. Other nouns of this group are byrōen, burden, fyxen, she-fox, vixen, giemen, responsibility, lygen, falsehood, æðelnes, nobility, clēnnes, purity, hālignes, holiness, mildheortnes, mercy.

(c) wo-stems

95. As in the wa-stems, the original w becomes u in the nominative singular when the root syllable is short; when the syllable is long the u is lost.

96. Paradigms: seonu, sinew; mēd, meadow; hrēow, repentance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>seonu</td>
<td>mēd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>seonwe</td>
<td>mēdwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>seonwe</td>
<td>mēdwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>seonwe</td>
<td>mēdwe, -e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Singular

95. As in the wa-stems, the original w becomes u in the nominative singular when the root syllable is short; when the syllable is long the u is lost.

96. Paradigms: seonu, sinew; mēd, meadow; hrēow, repentance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hrēo(w)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hrēowe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hrēowe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hrēowe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

97. Like seonu are declined beadu, battle, nearu. distress, sceadu shadow. Sceadu sometimes has the forms of the o-stems.

98. Like mēd is declined lās, pasture.
99. Like hréow are declined stōw, place, tréow, faih.

100. The inflected forms of the short-stemmed nouns sometimes have u before the w, as in seonuwe, etc.

FEMININE ABSTRACT NOUNS

101. Three types of abstract nouns may be placed under the o-declension, because, although they were not originally o-stems, their inflection is like that of the o-stems.

(1) Abstracts in -ung

102. Paradigm: bodung, preaching.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bodung</td>
<td>boduniga, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bodunga, -e</td>
<td>bodunga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bodunga, -e</td>
<td>bodungum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bodunga, -e</td>
<td>bodunga, -e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ending -a in the genitive, dative, accusative singular is the commoner of the two forms.

103. Other nouns of this type are blētsung, blessing, costnung, temptation, getācnung, signification, hådung, ordination, lēasung, falsehood, leornung, learning, prōwung, suffering.

(2) Abstracts in -pu

104. Paradigm: yrmþu, misery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. yrmþu, -o</td>
<td>yrmþa, -e, -u, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. yrmþe, -u, -o</td>
<td>yrmþa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. yrmþe, -u, -o</td>
<td>yrmþum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. yrmþe, -u, -o</td>
<td>yrmþa, -e, -u, -o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
105. These nouns were originally formed from adjectives and had the suffix -ipu, i causing mutation of the radical vowel and then being syncopated. For example, earm, miserable + ipu, with mutation and syncopation becomes iermpu or yrmpu, misery. The u of the nominative singular is often dropped. These nouns, as will be seen from the paradigm, often keep the u throughout the entire singular.

106. Other nouns of this group are cēnpu, boldness, geohpo, sorrow, hynpu, humiliation, lengpu, length, mārpo, fame, myrp, mirth, strengpu, strength, werhpu, damnation.

(3) Abstracts in -in

107. Paradigm: bysigu, trouble

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bysigu, -o</td>
<td>bysiga, -e, -u, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bysige, -u, -o</td>
<td>bysiga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bysige, -u, -o</td>
<td>bysigum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bysige, -u, -o</td>
<td>bysiga, -e, -u, -o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

108. These nouns were also originally formed from adjectives by adding the suffix -in, i causing mutation of the radical vowel. The mutated vowel is still seen, but the inflectional endings early became those of the o-declension.

109. Other nouns declined like bysigu are bieldu, boldness, ieldo, age, fyrhto, fright, gesynto, prosperity, hālu, salvation, hyldo, favor, snyttro, wisdom, strengu, strength, wiencu, pride.

II. i-declension or -e plurals

110. The feminine nouns of this declension all have long stems; those with short stems are declined like the nouns of the o-declen-
sion. The mutated radical vowel and the accusative singular without an ending are the distinguishing signs of the declension.

111. Paradigms: tid, time; wyrd, fate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. tid</td>
<td>wyrd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. tide</td>
<td>tide, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. tide</td>
<td>tida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. tid, -e</td>
<td>wyrde, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tide, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wyrde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The accusative singular in -e and the nominative-accusative plural in -a, endings taken from the o-declension, may also be found.

112. Other nouns of this class are āht, possession, bēn, prayer, brŷd, bride, cwên, queen, dǣd, deed, ēst, favor, fierd, army, miht, might, nyd, need, scyl, guilt, spēd, speed, wēn, expectation.

113. Only a very few feminine nouns of this declension remain, duru, door, and hand, hand, being the most important. The rest have gone over to the o-declension. The inflectional endings are those of the masculine u nouns, the u of the nominative-accusative singular disappearing after a long syllable.

114. Paradigms: duru, door; hand, hand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. duru</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dura</td>
<td>handa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dura</td>
<td>handa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. duru</td>
<td>dura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>handa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>handa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>handa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>handa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFLECTION

115. The other nouns in this declension are nosu, nose, cweorn, mill, flōr, floor, all of which may be found with the inflectional endings of the o-declension.

B. WEAK DECLENSION

(n-stems)

116. This large declension corresponds to the Latin n-stems (lumen, lumenis). It contains all masculine nouns ending in -a in the nominative singular, all feminines ending in -e, and two neuters ending in -e. The n is part of the original stem as may be seen from the genitive plural.

MASCULINES

117. Paradigms: cnapa, boy; wēa, woe.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cnapa</td>
<td>wēa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cnapan</td>
<td>wēan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cnapan</td>
<td>wēan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cnapan</td>
<td>wēan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

118. Like cnapa are declined Alwalda, Lord, bana, slayer, boda, messenger, brytta, dispenser, cempa, warrior, draca, dragon from Lat. draco, eafora, son, egesa, terror, flota, sailor, ship, fruma, beginning, galga, gallow, gefēra, companion, gerēfa, reeve, guma, man, hālga, saint, hunta, hunter, lēoma, light, lichoma, body, mōna, moon, naca, ship, nama, name, pāpa, pope from Lat. papa, sefa, mind, stēda, steed, wiga, warrior, wita, counselor, and many others.

119. Like wēa, with contraction, are declined frēa, lord, gefēa, joy, pēa, peacock from Lat. pavo, and a few others.
GRAMMAR

FEMININES

120. Paradigms: hearpe, harp; flā, arrow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hearpe</td>
<td>flā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. hearpan</td>
<td>flān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. hearpan</td>
<td>flān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hearpan</td>
<td>hearpan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>flān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hearpan</td>
<td>hearpena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flān</td>
<td>flāna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flan</td>
<td>hearpum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nan</td>
<td>flānum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

121. Like hearpe are declined sælmesse, alms, bune, cup, byrne, trumpet, byrne, coat-of-mail, byrnie, carte, chart from Lat. charta, cirice, church, eorhe, earth, fāmne, maiden, feohte, fight, folde, earth, folme, hand, heorte, heart, nādre, adder, sunne, sun, syrce, shirt-of-mail, tunge, tongue, wise, manner, etc.

122. Like flā, with contraction, are declined bēo, bee, rēo, covering, tā, toe, and a few others.

NEUTERS

123. Paradigm: ēare, ear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ēare</td>
<td>ēaran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ēaran</td>
<td>ēarena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ēaran</td>
<td>ēarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ēare</td>
<td>ēaran</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

124. The one other neuter noun in this declension is ēage, eye. It will be seen that the neuters are declined exactly like the feminines with the exception of the accusative singular, which is like the nominative.
C. MINOR DECLENSIONS

Five small declensions may for convenience be grouped together.

I. Radical Consonant Declension (Mutation Plurals)

125. The nouns in this group are monosyllables ending in a consonant. They have mutation of the root vowel but no inflectional ending in the dative singular and nominative-accusative plural, because these cases originally ended in -i and -iz, i causing the mutation.

MASCULINES

126. Paradigms: man(n), man; tōp, tooth.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc. man(n)</td>
<td>tōp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mannes</td>
<td>tōbes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. men(n)</td>
<td>tēp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

127. The only other masculine of this declension is fōt, foot, plural fēt.

FEMININES

128. Paradigms: gōs, goose; mūs, mouse; burg, city; cū, cow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc. gōs</td>
<td>mūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. gēs, gōse</td>
<td>mūs, mūse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. gēs</td>
<td>mūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc. gōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. gōsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. gōsum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The genitive singular of the feminines may have mutation or may have an unmutated vowel with the regular genitive ending, -e, by analogy with the o-stems.

129. Other nouns of this group are bōc, book, pl. bēc, brōc, breeches, pl. brēc, gāt, goat, pl. gēt, lūs, louse, pl. lūs, neaht, niht, night, pl. niht. The genitive nihtes often found in adverbial usage is formed by analogy with dæges, with which word it is often used.

NEUTERS

130. There is only one neuter remaining, scrūd, garment, which has the dative singular, scryd, but is otherwise declined like an a-stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>scrūd</td>
<td>scrūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>scrūdes</td>
<td>scrūda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>scryd</td>
<td>scrūdum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. r-declension

131. This declension consists of nouns of relationship ending in -r: fæder, father, brōðor, brother, mōdor, mother, dohtor, daughter, sweostor, sister. The collective plurals gebrōðor, -ru, brothers, and gesweostor, -ru, sisters, complete this group.

132. Paradigms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fæder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fæder, fæd(e)res</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fæder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**INFLECTION**

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc.</td>
<td>fæd(e)ras</td>
<td>fæd(e)rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>brōðor</td>
<td>mōdor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>brōðru</td>
<td>mōdrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-dra</td>
<td>-tra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fæd(e)ra</td>
<td>mōdra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-dra</td>
<td>-tra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fæd(e)rum</td>
<td>mōdrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dohtor</td>
<td>dohtrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swoestor</td>
<td>swostrum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. *nd*-declension

133. This declension is composed of masculine nouns formed from present participles.

134. Paradigms: fëond, enemy; wigend, warrior.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc.</td>
<td>fiend, wigend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōnd, wigende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōndas, wigendas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fōndes, wigendes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōnda, wigendra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fiend, fōnde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wigende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōndum, wigendum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

135. Like fōnd, with mutation in the dative singular and nominative-accusative plural, are declined frōnd, friend, téond, accuser.

136. The -e in the nominative-accusative plural and the -ra in the genitive plural of wigend are taken from the declension of the present participle as an adjective (see Paragraph 219, 7). Other nouns similarly declined are āgend, owner, būend, dweller, démend, judge, Hālend, Savior, hettend, enemy, Nergend, Savior, rīend, rīder, scyppend, creator, wealdend, ruler.
IV. \textit{p}-declension

137. Only four nouns of this declension remain: \textit{hæleð}, \textit{hero}, and \textit{mōnað}, \textit{month} (masculine); \textit{mæg(e)ð}, \textit{maiden} (feminine); \textit{ealu}, \textit{ale} (neuter).

138. Paradigms:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l l l l}
\textbf{Singular} & & & \\
Nom. & Acc. \textit{hæle}, \textit{hæleð} & \textit{mōnað} & \textit{mæg(e)ð} & \textit{ealu} \\
Gen. & \textit{hæleðes} & \textit{mōn(a)ðes} & \textit{mæg(e)ð} & \textit{ealod} \\
Dat. & \textit{hæleðe} & \textit{mōn(a)ðe} & \textit{mæg(e)ð} & \textit{ealod} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l l l l}
\textbf{Plural} & & & \\
Nom. & Acc. \textit{hæleð}, \textit{hæleðas} & \textit{mōnað}, \textit{mōn(e)ðas} & \textit{mæg(e)ð} \\
Gen. & \textit{hæleða} & \textit{mōn(e)ða} & \textit{mæg(e)ða} & \textit{ealeða} \\
Dat. & \textit{hæleðum} & \textit{mōn(e)ðum} & \textit{mæg(e)ðum} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

The \textit{o} in the nominative singular of these words was not there originally but was taken from the inflected cases. The genitive singular forms in -es and nominative-accusative plural forms in -as come from the \textit{a}-declension.

V. \textit{es-}, \textit{os}-declension; -\textit{ru} plurals

139. This declension of neuters, corresponding to the Latin neuters in -\textit{us} (\textit{pecus}, \textit{pecoris}), has lost most of its nouns to the \textit{a}- and \textit{i}-declensions. The distinguishing feature of the declension, the \textit{r} in the suffix, no longer appears in the singular but only in the plural forms.

140. Paradigm: \textit{cealf}, \textit{calf}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l l}
\textbf{Singular} & \textbf{Plural} \\
Nom Acc. \textit{cealf} & \textit{cealfru} \\
Gen. \textit{cealfes} & \textit{cealfra} \\
Dat. \textit{cealfe} & \textit{cealfrum} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
INFLECTION

141. Like cealf are declined ēg, ēgg, lamb, lamb, and sometimes cild, child. Lamb and cild both have also the nominative-accusative plural forms without an ending. Such words as dōgor, day, ēagor, sea, hrýðer, cattle, sigor, victory, wildor, beast, show the original r in the singular but are declined like nouns of the a-declension.

D. COMPOUND NOUNS

142. To this account of the various declensions a word may be added about compound nouns, which constitute a very large part of the vocabulary of Old English, especially the poetry. The two elements of the compound, when both are nouns, may or may not be of the same gender. In the latter case the gender of the compound is that of the second element. A short list follows, showing the various combinations of genders which may be found.

(1) Masculine-neuter, declined as neuter:

bēah-hord, treasure-hoard, dæg-weorc, day's work, gum-cynn, mankind, medo-ærn, meadhall, morgen-lēoht, morning-light, stān-clif, stone cliff.

(2) Masculine-feminine, declined as feminine:

dæg-hwil, day, ende-lāf, last remnant, fēond-grāp, enemy's grip, here-spēd, success in war, māþum-gifu, treasure gift, medo-benc, mead-bench.

(3) Feminine-masculine, declined as masculine:

beadu-rinc, warrior, candel-stāf, candlestick, ceaster-būend, city dweller, eaxl-gestealla, shoulder companion, gūp-rinc, warrior, heal-þegn, hall-thane.
(4) Feminine-neuter, declined as neuter:

beadu-lāc, battle-sport, eorpl-hūs, earth-house, fyrd-lēop, war-song, hilde-bill, war-sword.

(5) Neuter-masculine, declined as masculine:

bān-cofa, body, bēor-sele, beer-hall, ellen-gāst, powerful demon, folc-cyning, folk-king, fyr-draca, fire-dragon, gleo-mann, gleeman, gold-smīp, goldsmith, sinc-gyfa, treasure-giver.

(6) Neuter-feminine, declined as feminine:


PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

143.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FIRST PERSON</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ık, I</td>
<td>wit, we two</td>
<td>wē, we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. min</td>
<td>uncer</td>
<td>üre, üser</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mê</td>
<td>unc</td>
<td>üs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mê, mec</td>
<td>unc, uncit</td>
<td>üs, üsic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECOND PERSON</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. þū, thou</td>
<td>git, ye two, you two</td>
<td>gē, ye, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. þīn</td>
<td>incer</td>
<td>ēower, ēower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. þē</td>
<td>inc</td>
<td>ēow, ēow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. þē, þelic</td>
<td>inc, incit</td>
<td>ēow, ēow, ēowie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFLECTION

Third Person

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. he, he</td>
<td>hēo, hīo, hīe, hī, she</td>
<td>hit, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. his</td>
<td>hiera, hire, hyre</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. him</td>
<td>hiera, hire, hyre</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hine, hiene, hyne</td>
<td>hīe, hī, hŷ, hēo</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

All Genders

| Nom. hīe, hī, hŷ, hēo, hīo, they |
| Gen. hiera, hira, hyra, heora, hiora |
| Dat. him, heom |
| Acc. hīe, hī, hŷ, hēo, hīo |

144. The personal pronouns, it will be noticed, in addition to the modern singular and plural have also a dual number in the first and second persons, which is translated by we (our, us) two and ye or you (your, you) two. There are also many variants of some of the forms, the most common spelling in each case being given first. The early accusative forms, mec, ðē, uncit, incit, ûsic, ðowic, were soon supplanted by the dative forms. The oblique case endings, as will be seen later, are like those of the strong adjectives.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

145. There is no independent reflexive pronoun in Old English, the various forms of the personal pronoun being used as reflexives. For emphasis the adjective, self, is sometimes used with the pronoun, in such cases being declined to agree with the pronoun it
modifies. Examples: He hine tæhte, _He taught himself_; Ac ic sōna eft mē selfum andwyrde, _But I then at once answered myself_.

### Possessive Pronouns

146. The possessive pronouns of the first two persons in Old English were formed from the genitives of the personal pronouns and are declined like strong adjectives. They are min, _my_ or _mine_, bīn, _thy_ or _thine_, uncēr, _of us two_, incēr, _of you two_, ūre, _our_ or _ours_, ēower, _your_ or _yours_. The third person possessive, sin, _his_, her or hers, _its_, their or theirs, formed from the stem of an old reflexive cognate with the Latin _suus_, and also declined like a strong adjective, was seldom used, its place being taken by the genitives of the third personal pronoun, his, _his_, hiere, _her_, his, _its_, hiera, _their_, which are not declined.

### Demonstrative Pronouns

147. There are two main demonstratives in Old English: sē, _that_, and þēs, _this_. The first of these is also used as the definite article, _the_, and sometimes in place of the third personal pronoun, _he_, as in the sentence, þæt sē on foldan læg, _so that he lay on the earth_. For its use as a relative see Paragraph 151.

148. Declension of sē

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sē, <em>that</em>, <em>the</em></td>
<td>sēo, sīo</td>
<td>þæt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>þæs</td>
<td>þāre</td>
<td>þæs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>þæm, þām</td>
<td>þāre</td>
<td>þæm, þām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>þone, þāne, þane</td>
<td>þā</td>
<td>þæt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>þy, þon, þē</td>
<td></td>
<td>þy, þon, þē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Instrumental.
### INFLECTION

**Plural**

*All Genders*

Nom. ṣā
Gen. ṣāra, ṣāra
Dat. ṣām, ṣām
Acc. ṣā

149. Declension of ṣēs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ṣēs, <em>this</em></td>
<td>ṣēos, ṣios</td>
<td>ṣis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ṣis(s)es</td>
<td>ṣisse, ṣis(se)re</td>
<td>ṣis(s)es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ṣis(s)um</td>
<td>ṣisse, ṣis(se)re</td>
<td>ṣis(s)um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ṣisne</td>
<td>ṣās</td>
<td>ṣis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins. ṣīs, ṣīs</td>
<td>ṣīs, ṣīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>All Genders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ṣās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ṣāsa, ṣeossa, ṣis(se)ra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ṣis(s)um, ṣīs(s)um, ṣeossa(s)um</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ṣās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

150. In the demonstrative sē ilca, *the same*, ilca is declined like a weak adjective. The demonstrative self (seolf, sīlf, sylf), *self*, is declined either strong or weak.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS

151. The relative in Old English may be expressed in three main ways:
(1) By the relative particle, þe, which is indeclinable.

Example: Sē ilca God þe gescēop Adam, the same God who created Adam.

(2) By the demonstrative sē and its inflected forms.

Examples: Dā wēs ān man rihtwis ðæforan God, sē wēs Nōe gehāt(en), There was one man righteous before God who was named Noah; Hēr fēng tō rīce Osric þone Paulīnus ār gefullode, In this year Osric, whom Paulinus had baptized, came to the throne.

(3) By the combination of the demonstrative sē with the particle þe, in which sē is declined and þe remains indeclinable.

Examples: Dā sē ellengēst... sē þe in þystrum bād, Then the bold demon who waited in darkness; healṣbēga mǣst þara þe ic on foldan gefrēgen hǣbbe, the greatest of necklaces of which I have heard on earth.

Occasionally the relative þe is used in combination with some form of the personal pronoun.

Example: Fæder ūre, þū þe eart on heofenum, Our Father who art in heaven.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

152. The interrogative pronoun, who, what, has only two genders, masculine and neuter, and no plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neuter</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hwā, who</td>
<td>hwæt, what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hwēs</td>
<td>hwēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hwēm, hwām</td>
<td>hwēm, hwām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ace.</td>
<td>hwone, hwane, hwēne</td>
<td>hwæt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>hwī, hwī, hwon</td>
<td>hwī, hwī, hwon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
153. The instrumental form, hwon, is used in the phrase, for hwon, why. Another form of the instrumental exists in hũ, how, used only as an adverb.

154. The interrogatives hwæ̃ser, which of two, and hwilc (hwylc, hwelc), which, what kind of, are declined like strong adjectives.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

155. (1) The commonest indefinite pronouns are: ālc, each; ān, a, an; nān, no one, none; ānig, any; nānig, none; ōðer, another, other; sum, someone, a certain one; swilc, such a one; man, one, they. All of these with the exception of the last, which is indeclinable, may be declined like strong adjectives.

(2) The interrogative pronouns hwā, hwæ̃ser, hwilc may also be used as indefinites, with the following meanings: hwā, hwilc, someone, anyone; hwæ̃t, something, anything; hwæ̃ser, someone, whichever. They are also combined with swā... swā in the forms swā hwā swā, who(so)ever, swā hwæ̃t swā, what(so)ever, swā hwæ̃ser swā, which(so)ever of two.

(3) Compounds of these interrogatives also give indefinites:

āhwā, anyone; āhwæ̃t, anything; āhwæ̃ser (āwðer, āðer, ōhwæ̃ser, ōwðer, ōðer), either, each

āghwā, anyone; āghhwæ̃t, anything; āghhwæ̃ser (āgðer), either, each; āghhwilc, each, every one

āthwā, each
gēhwā, each, every one; gehwelc, each, every one; gehhwæ̃ser, each of two

nāhwæ̃ser, neither

nāt (I do not know) + hwā, hwelc: nāthwā, nāthwelc, anyone whatever

hwæ̃t(h)wugu, something; hwelc(h)wugu, anyone, someone
(4) Other compounds are:
āwiht (āwuht, āuht, āht, ōwiht, ōwuht, ōht), *anything*
ñāwiht (ñāwuht, nāuht, nāht, nōwiht, nōwuht, nōht),
*nothing*.

ADJECTIVES

DECLENSION

156. There are two declensions of adjectives in Old English, the strong and the weak, the use of which is determined by the position of the adjective in the sentence. Most adjectives may be declined in both ways.

The strong declension is used when the adjective is a predicate adjective, when it is unmodified by the definite article or a possessive pronoun, and when it does not fall into any of the categories belonging to the weak declension. The strong declension is in many ways similar to the a- (ja-, wa-) and o- (jo-, wo-) declensions of nouns. Certain case endings, however, which are italicized in the paradigm given below, resemble those of the pronouns rather than of the nouns. The instrumental case, corresponding to the Latin ablative, is also given in the paradigm because in the masculine and neuter singular it has a different ending from the dative which it elsewhere resembles.

A. STRONG DECLENSION

I. MONOSYLLABLES

(a) Short Stems

157. Paradigm: *tam, tame*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>tam</td>
<td>tamu</td>
<td>tam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>tames</td>
<td>tamre</td>
<td>tames</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
158. Like tam are declined cwic, alive, gram, hostile, sum, some, til, good, and a few others.

159. Adjectives whose root vowel is æ normally change the æ to a in cases where the inflectional ending begins with one of the vowels, a, o, u (see Paragraph 12). The presence of æ, however, is in some words confined only to the forms having a closed syllable, forms like smales and smale in the paradigm below being used by analogy with the others in -a or -u.

Paradigm: smæl, small.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. smæl</td>
<td>smalu</td>
<td>smæl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. smæles, smales</td>
<td>smælre</td>
<td>smæles, smales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. smalum</td>
<td>smælre</td>
<td>smalum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. smæline</td>
<td>smæle, smale</td>
<td>smæl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins. smæle, smale</td>
<td>smælre</td>
<td>smæle, smale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc. smæle, smale</td>
<td>smala, smæle, smale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. smælra</td>
<td>smælra</td>
<td>smælra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. smalum</td>
<td>smalum</td>
<td>smalum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
160. Like smæl are declined blæc, black, glæd, glad, hraed, quick, sæd, sad.

(b) Long Stems

161. The long-stemmed monosyllables are declined like the short-stemmed with the exception of two cases, the nominative singular feminine and the nominative-accusative plural neuter, where the regular ending, -u, is dropped. This loss of u is identical with that in strong nouns. Compare gūð, nominative singular feminine, and sweord, nominative plural neuter.

Paradigm: sōð, true.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sōð</td>
<td>sōð</td>
<td>sōð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sōðes</td>
<td>sōðre</td>
<td>sōðes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sōðum</td>
<td>sōðre</td>
<td>sōðum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sōðne</td>
<td>sōðe</td>
<td>sōð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>sōðe</td>
<td>sōðre</td>
<td>sōðe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc.</td>
<td>sōðe</td>
<td>sōða, -e</td>
<td>sōð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sōðra</td>
<td>sōðra</td>
<td>sōðra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sōðum</td>
<td>sōðum</td>
<td>sōðum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

162. Like sōð are declined beorht, bright, brād, broad, ceald, cold, cūð, known, dēad, dead, eald, old, earm, poor, fersc, fresh, frōð, wise, fūl, foul, gēap, spacious, geong, young, grimm, grim, hār, hoary, hlūd, loud, hwit, white, lāð, loathsome, sār, sore, sweart, swarthy, wōð, mad, and many others.

163. Adjectives ending in -h lost it before inflectional ending.
beginning with a vowel, in accordance with the law regarding the
loss of intervocalic h. (See Paragraph 20.) Many of the forms,
therefore, show contraction.

Paradigm: hēah, high.

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hēah</td>
<td>hēah</td>
<td>hēah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. hēas</td>
<td>hēahre, hēarre</td>
<td>hēas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. hēaum, hēam</td>
<td>hēahre, hēarre</td>
<td>hēaum, hēam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hēahne, hēanne</td>
<td>hēa</td>
<td>hēah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins. hēa</td>
<td>hēahre, hēarre</td>
<td>hēa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

| Nom. Acc. hēa | hēa | hēa |
| Gen. hēahra, hēar(r)a | hēahra, hēar(r)a | hēahra, hēar(r)a |
| Dat. hēaum, hēam | hēaum, hēam | hēaum, hēam |

164. Like hēah are declined fāh, hostile, hrēoh, rough, nēah, near, rūh, rough.

II. DISYLLABLES

165. Dissyllabic adjectives in Old English may end in a con-
sonant, in e, or in u (o). Those ending in a consonant (-ig, -el, -en,
-er, -ol, -or) generally lose the final u of the feminine singular
nominative and of the neuter plural nominative and accusative,
and do not syncopate the vowel of the second syllable, if they have
a short radical syllable. When, however, the radical syllable is
long they usually retain the u and have syncopation before an in-
flectional ending beginning with a vowel.
166. **Paradigms:** bysig, *busy*; mōdиг, *brave.*

### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bysig</td>
<td>bysig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bysiges</td>
<td>bysigre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bysigum</td>
<td>bysigre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bysigne</td>
<td>bysig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>bysige</td>
<td>bysigre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. Acc.</th>
<th>bysige</th>
<th>bysig, -e</th>
<th>bysig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bysigra</td>
<td>bysigra</td>
<td>bysigra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bysigum</td>
<td>bysigum</td>
<td>bysigum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feminine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>mōdиг</td>
<td>mōdigu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mōdges</td>
<td>mōdigre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mōdgum</td>
<td>mōdigre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mōdigne</td>
<td>mōdge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>mōdge</td>
<td>mōdigre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. Acc.</th>
<th>mōdge</th>
<th>mōd, -e</th>
<th>mōdigu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mōdigra</td>
<td>mōdigra</td>
<td>mōdigra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mōdgum</td>
<td>mōdgum</td>
<td>mōdgum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

168. Like mòdig are declined blòdig, bloody, clùdlig, cloudy, 
grèdig, greedy, sàrìg, sorry, wèrig, weary, ìdel, íðle, ìýtel, ítlle, 
middel, middle, ãgen, own, crìsten, Christian, hâðen, heathen, 
dìegol, secret, gèomor, sad, hlùtor, pure.

_Dissyllables in -e_

169. Dissyllables ending in -e (ja-, jo-, i- stems) are declined 
like tam.

Paradigm: déore, dear. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>déore</td>
<td>dèoru, -o</td>
<td>déore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dèores</td>
<td>dèor(r)e</td>
<td>dèores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dèorum</td>
<td>dèor(r)e</td>
<td>dèorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dèòrne</td>
<td>dèore</td>
<td>dèore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>dèore</td>
<td>dèor(r)e</td>
<td>dèore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_Singular_ 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc.</td>
<td>déore</td>
<td>dèora, -e</td>
<td>déoru, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dèor(r)a</td>
<td>dèor(r)a</td>
<td>dèor(r)a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dèorum</td>
<td>dèorum</td>
<td>dèorum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

170. Like déore are declined brème, famous, clàene, clean, èce, 
eternal, èste, gracious, màre, famous, rice, rich, stille, still, swète, 
sweet.

_Dissyllables in -u_

171. Dissyllables ending in -u, -o (wa-, wo-stems) are also 
declined like tam. Before an inflectional ending which begins 
with a consonant the w of the stem is vocalized to o; before an in­
fectional ending which begins with a vowel. w is retained.
### Paradigm: fealu, fallow.

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fealu, -o</td>
<td>fealu, -o</td>
<td>fealu, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fealwes</td>
<td>fealore</td>
<td>fealwes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fealwum</td>
<td>fealore</td>
<td>fealwum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fealwe</td>
<td>fealwe</td>
<td>fealu, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>fealwe</td>
<td>fealwe</td>
<td>fealwe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Acc.</td>
<td>fealwe</td>
<td>fealwa, -e</td>
<td>fealu, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fealora</td>
<td>fealora</td>
<td>fealora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fealwum</td>
<td>fealwum</td>
<td>fealwum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

172. Like fealu are declined gearu, ready, geolu, yellow, hasu, gray, nearu, narrow, salu, sallow.

173. If the root vowel of these wa-, wo-stems is long, there is no vocalization of w, the adjective, except when it has a prefix, remaining a monosyllable. The declension is like that of sóð. Gléaw, wise, sláw, slow, unsláw, not slow, are examples.

### Compound Adjectives

174. Polysyllabic adjectives which are compounds, those, for example, ending in -feald, -faest, -full, -lás, -sum, -weard, etc., are declined according to the last part of the compound. If this is a long syllable, they are declined like sóð; if a short syllable, like tam.

### B. Weak Declension

175. The weak declension of the adjective is used in the following circumstances:

(1) After the definite article sē or the demonstrative þēs:
(2) After a possessive pronoun;
(3) In modifying a noun in the vocative case;
(4) In the comparative degree and frequently in the superlative;
(5) In the inflection of the ordinals, with the exception of fyrmest, fyr(e)st, ærest, first, which may be either weak or strong, and ðer, second, which is always strong;
(6) Ordinarily when the adjective appears as a noun;
(7) Often in poetry where in prose the strong form would be found.

176. The weak declension is like that of nouns, with the exception of the genitive plural, where the strong form is more common than the weak.

Paradigm: cealda, cold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. cealda</td>
<td>cealde</td>
<td>cealde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cealdan</td>
<td>cealdan</td>
<td>cealdan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cealdan</td>
<td>cealdan</td>
<td>cealdan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. cealdan</td>
<td>cealdan</td>
<td>cealde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural — All Genders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. Acc. cealdan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cealdra, cealdena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cealdum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

177. Adjectives in Old English regularly form the comparative by adding *-ra* (originally *-ora*), and the superlative, by adding *-ost*, to the positive form.
72  GRAMMAR

Positive   Comparative   Superlative

déop, deep  dêopra      dêopost
sæd, sad    sædra       sadost
céne, keen  cénra       cénost
nearu, narrow nearora    nearwost
wërig, weary wërigra     wërigost

In like manner are compared the majority of Old English adjectives.

178. A small group of adjectives has mutation in the comparative and superlative, and the ending -est instead of -ost in the latter. This mutation was caused by the presence of an i in the original endings, which were -ira and -ist. The i of the comparative was lost and of the superlative changed to e.

eald, old    ieldra       ieldest
ëaðe, easy   ieðra        ieðest
feorr, far   fierra       fierrest
geong, young giengra     giengest
grēat, great grietra     griest
hēah, high   hīehra, hierra, hēahra hīehst
lang, long   lengra       lengest
nēah, near   nēahra, nēarra (not mutated) nīehst

sceort, short sciertra     sciertest
strang, strong strengra     strengest

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

179. A few adjectives are compared irregularly. Some of these have different roots.

gōd, good  \begin{align*}
& \{ \text{bet(e)ra} \} \\
& \{ \text{sēla, sēlla} \}
\end{align*}  \begin{align*}
& \{ \text{betst} \} \\
& \{ \text{sēlest, sēlost} \}
\end{align*}
INFLECTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inflected Form</th>
<th>Weak Form</th>
<th>Long Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yfel, evil</td>
<td>wiersa</td>
<td>wierrest, wierst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lytel, little</td>
<td>læssa</td>
<td>læst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micel, great</td>
<td>mära</td>
<td>mäest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

180. Others are based on adverbs or prepositions and have no positive degree existing as an adjective. Most of these have a longer form of the comparative ending, -erra, and of the superlative, -mest. This latter is really a double superlative for it represents a combination of the old superlative suffix -uma with the form -ist. A survival of the old simple form is seen in the superlatives forma, first, hindema, last, meduma, midmost, listed below.

(aer, before) aerra arest
(fore, before) furera fyrest, forma, fyrmest
(hindan, behind) hindema
(aefter, after) aefterra aeftemest
(inne, within) innerra innemest
(ute, without) uterra, yterra utemest, ytemest
(ufan, above) uferra, yferra ufemest, yfemest
(midd, mid) meduma, mid(e)mest
(niSan, below) niSerra niSest
(læt, late) lætra lætemest, lætest
(siS, late) siSra siSest
(norS, north) norSerra norSest
(suS, south) süSerra, sySerra suSest
(ést, east) ésterra éstemest
(west, west) westerra westemest

DECLENSION

181. The comparative is always declined weak; the superlative may be either weak or strong.
### 182. Cardinals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>twēgen, twā, tü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>þrie, þrió, þrēo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fēower, fiower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>fif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>siex, six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>seofon, siofon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>eahta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nigon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>tien, tŷn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>endle(o)fan, endlufon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>þrēotiene, -tŷne, -tēne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>fēowertiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>fiftiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>siextiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>seofontiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>eahtatiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>nigontiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>twēntig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ān and twēntig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>þrittig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>fēowertig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>fiftig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>siextig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>(hund)seofontig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>(hund)eahtatig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>(hund)nigontig</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ordinals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>forma, formesta, fyrmest(a), fyr(e)st(a), ërest(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ōðer, æftërra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>þridda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fēo(we)rōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>fīhta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>si(e)xta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>seofōda, seofēda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>eahtōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nigoða</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>tēða</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>endle(o)fta, ellefta, endlyfts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelfta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>þrēotēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>fēowertēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>fīttēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>siextēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>seofontēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>eahtatēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>nigontēōda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>twēntigōa, -tigōa, -tīga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>þrittigōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>fēowertigōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>fīttigōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>siextigōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>(hund)seofontigōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>(hund)eahtatigōa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>(hund)nigontigōa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Cardinals and Ordinals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Norse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>hund, hundred</td>
<td>hundtēontig, hundtēontigoða</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>hundendle(o)fantig</td>
<td>hundendle(o)f(an)tigoða</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>hundtwelftig</td>
<td>hundtwelftigoða</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>twā or tü hund, hundred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>þrēo hund, hundred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>þūsend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Declension of Numerals

183. The cardinal ān, which may also be used as the indefinite article, *a, an*, is declined as a strong adjective. It has two forms in the masculine accusative singular, ānne and ānne, and two forms in the masculine and neuter instrumental singular, āne and āne. The plural forms are used with the meaning *only*, e.g., þā ān, *those only*, and idiomatically in the expression, ānra gehwilc, *each*, literally *each of ones*. When ān has the meaning *alone* it is usually declined weak.

184. Twēgen is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>twēgen</td>
<td>twā</td>
<td>tū, twā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>twēg(e)a, twēgra</td>
<td>twēg(e)a, twēgra</td>
<td>twēg(e)a, twēgra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>twām, twām</td>
<td>twām, twām</td>
<td>twām, twām</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

185. Bēgen, *both*, is declined like twēgen: feminine, bā, neuter, bü.

186. Þrē is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>þrē, þrī</td>
<td>þrēo, þrīo</td>
<td>þrēo, þrīo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>þrēora, þrīora</td>
<td>þrēora, þrīora</td>
<td>þrēora, þrīora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
<td>þrī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>þrīm</td>
<td>þrīm</td>
<td>þrīm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
187. The other cardinals are generally not inflected when they are used with nouns. They may be followed either by the nominative-accusative case of the noun, e.g., seofon menn, seven men, or by the partitive genitive, e.g., fiftig manna, fifty men. When used alone they are declined, those from 4 to 19 inclusive having the endings nominative-accusative, -e, genitive, -a, dative, -um; those in -tig having genitive, -a, -ra, dative, -um, and occasionally a genitive singular, -es.

188. The ordinals are declined weak with the exception of fyrmest, fyr(e)st, ærest, which may be either weak or strong, and ōper, which is always strong.

ADVERBS

FORMATION

189. Most adverbs in Old English, with the exception of those indicating place, are either formed from adjectives or are oblique cases of nouns and adjectives.

(1) Adverbs are commonly formed by adding -e to adjectives. Examples: beorht, bright, beorhte, brightly; eornoste, earnestly, fægere, fairly, fæste, fast, sweotole, clearly, swiðe, very, exceedingly. When the adjective itself ends in -e there is no difference between it and the adverb. Examples: æbele, nobly, from the adjective æbele, noble; clæne, cleanly, from the adjective clæne, clean.

(2) The addition of -e to adjectives with the suffix -lic, e.g., glædlíc, glad, glædlice, gladly, resulted in the entire ending -lice acquiring an adverbial sense. It was then added to other adjectives to form adverbs and in time became the commonest of all adverbial endings. Lice exists today in its shortened form as our adverbial suffix, ly. Examples: bealdlice, boldly.
câflice, boldly, eornostlice, earnestly, grâdliglice, greedily, ofestlice, hastily.

(3) Adverbs are also formed by adding the suffixes -a, -unga, -inga to adjectives or other parts of speech. Examples: sôna, soon, tela, well, eallunga, entirely, somnunga, suddenly, fâringa, suddenly.

(4) The following oblique cases of nouns and adjectives are used in an adverbial sense:

(a) Genitive singular: dæges, by day, nihtes, by night,1 ealles, altogether, elles, else, nealles, not at all, self-willes, voluntarily, singâles, continually, þæs, to that degree, so.

(b) Genitive plural: gêara, long since, of yore, ungêara, recently.

(c) Dative-Instrumental singular: hwene, somewhat, micle, much, sâre, sorely, þearle, severely, weorce, painfully.

(d) Dative-Instrumental plural: furðum, just, fyrenum, wickedly, hwilum, sometimes, lýtllum, little, miclum, very, ofestum, hastily, stund-mælum, now and then, wundrum, wonderfully.

(e) Accusative singular: ealneg, always, fyrm, formerly, full, fully, genôg, enough, hwôn, somewhat, lýtel, lýt, little, ungemet, immoderately, ûpweard, upward, norþwearð, northward, sûþwearð, southward, easteard, eastward, westward, westward.

190. The chief adverbs of time not included in the above lists are æfre, ever, nœfre, never, ðer, before, hwanne, when, þonne, then, oft, often.

1 Niht is a feminine noun. It acquired the -es ending by analogy with dæges.
191. The chief adverbs of place are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place where</th>
<th>Place to which</th>
<th>Place from which</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hēr, here</td>
<td>hider, hither</td>
<td>heonon, hence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þēr, there</td>
<td>þider, thither</td>
<td>þonan, thence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hwǣr, where</td>
<td>hwider, whither</td>
<td>hwonan, whence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inne, innan, within</td>
<td>inn</td>
<td>innan, from within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūte, ītan, without</td>
<td>īt</td>
<td>ītan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uppe, īp, up, above</td>
<td>īp(p)</td>
<td>uppan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ufan, above</td>
<td></td>
<td>ufan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neoþan, beneath</td>
<td>niþer</td>
<td>neoþan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foran, before, in front</td>
<td>forō</td>
<td>foran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hindan, behind</td>
<td>hinder</td>
<td>hindan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feorran, far</td>
<td>feor(r)</td>
<td>feorran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nēah, near</td>
<td>nēar</td>
<td>nēan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēast, east</td>
<td>ēastan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>west, west</td>
<td>westan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>norþ, north</td>
<td>norþan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sūþ, south</td>
<td>sūþan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COMPARISON

192. As a rule only adverbs in -e are compared. The comparative is regularly formed by adding -or, the superlative, by adding -ost to the stem of the positive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hādre, clearly</th>
<th>hādor</th>
<th>hādrost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>luifice, lovely</td>
<td>lufficor</td>
<td>lufficost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

193. A few adverbs have mutation in the comparative and superlative, e.g., lange, long, leng, lengest; a few in the comparative only, e.g., sófte, softly, sóft, sóftost.
194. A small group of adverbs form their comparative and superlative from a different stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wel, well</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>betst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēl</td>
<td>sēlost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yfele, badly</td>
<td>wiers</td>
<td>wierrest, wierst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micle, much</td>
<td>mā</td>
<td>māst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>līt, lītle, little</td>
<td>līs</td>
<td>līst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VERBS

195. Old English verbs, like those of other Germanic languages, are divided into two main groups, strong and weak. Strong verbs are characterized by a change in the root vowel of the principal parts, known as gradation or ablaut. Weak verbs have no such change but form their preterit and past participle by adding -de (-te), -ede, or -ode and -d (-t), -ed, or -od respectively to the root. There is also a small group known as Preterit-Present or Strong-Weak verbs, and a still smaller group of Anomalous verbs.

196. Old English verbs have but one voice, the active. One remnant of the old medial-passive voice exists in the form hātte, is or was called or named, from the verb hātan. The passive of other verbs was formed as in modern English by combining some part of the auxiliary verbs bēon, wesan, to be, or weorðan, to become, with the past participle.

197. There are three moods in Old English, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative.

198. There are only two tenses, the present and the preterit. The future is expressed either by the present or by the use of the auxiliary verbs sculan, shall, willan, will, with the infinitive; occasionally the verb bēon or wesan is used with the present participle. The preterit tense may express any past time, but the use of hab-
ban, have, with the past participle of transitive verbs, and bēon, be, with the past participle of intransitive verbs to express the perfect and pluperfect became fairly common. The preterit used with the adverb ār, formerly, appears usually to have had the meaning of the pluperfect tense. Example: Reced wearðode unrim eorla, swā hie oft ār dydon, A great number of earls guarded the hall, as they had often done.

199. There are two numbers, singular and plural (no dual form of the verb exists), and three persons. The latter all have the same form in the plural.

STRONG VERBS

200. Strong verbs are divided into seven classes, the first six following a regular gradation or ablaut series, the seventh being a survival of an old Indo-European group known as Reduplicating verbs. The gradation series may be seen in the four principal parts, which consist of the Infinitive (the radical vowel of which is also that of the present tense), the Preterit Singular for the first and third persons, the Preterit Plural, and the Past Participle. The endings of these are -an, ——, -on, -en.

CLASS I

201. Gradation series: i; ā; i; i (Primitive Germanic, i; ai; i; i) The most important of the verbs of this group are given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bidan, bide</td>
<td>(bitt)</td>
<td>bād</td>
<td>bidon</td>
<td>biden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitan, bite</td>
<td>(bītt)</td>
<td>bāt</td>
<td>biton</td>
<td>biten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The 3d person singular present indicative, although not one of the principal parts, is given here for the convenience of students.
### Inflection

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blican, shine</td>
<td>blicḥ</td>
<td>blāc</td>
<td>blicon</td>
<td>blicen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clifan, cling to</td>
<td>clifḥ</td>
<td>clāf</td>
<td>clifon</td>
<td>clifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drifan, drive</td>
<td>drifḥ</td>
<td>drāf</td>
<td>drifon</td>
<td>drifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitan, contend</td>
<td>fitḥ</td>
<td>flāt</td>
<td>fliton</td>
<td>fliten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glidan, glide</td>
<td>glitt</td>
<td>glād</td>
<td>glidon</td>
<td>gliden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gripan, grip</td>
<td>gripḥ</td>
<td>grāp</td>
<td>gripon</td>
<td>gripen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hnitan, clash</td>
<td>hnitṭ</td>
<td>hnāt</td>
<td>hniton</td>
<td>hniten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrinon, touch</td>
<td>hrinḥ</td>
<td>hrān</td>
<td>hrinon</td>
<td>hrinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nipan, grow dark</td>
<td>nipḥ</td>
<td>nāp</td>
<td>nipon</td>
<td>nipen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ridan, ride</td>
<td>ritt</td>
<td>rād</td>
<td>ridon</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risan, rise</td>
<td>rīst</td>
<td>rās</td>
<td>rison</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scīnan, shine</td>
<td>scīnḥ</td>
<td>scān</td>
<td>scinon</td>
<td>scinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrīpan, shrive</td>
<td>scrīfḥ</td>
<td>scrāf</td>
<td>scrifon</td>
<td>scrifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slidan, slide</td>
<td>slitt</td>
<td>slād</td>
<td>slidon</td>
<td>sliden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slitan, slit</td>
<td>slītt</td>
<td>slāt</td>
<td>sliton</td>
<td>sliten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stīgan, ascend</td>
<td>stīgḥ</td>
<td>stāg</td>
<td>stigon</td>
<td>stigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strīcan, stroke</td>
<td>strīcḥ</td>
<td>strāc</td>
<td>stricon</td>
<td>stricen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strīdan, stride</td>
<td>strītt</td>
<td>strād</td>
<td>stridon</td>
<td>striden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swīcan, fail</td>
<td>swīcḥ</td>
<td>swāc</td>
<td>swicon</td>
<td>swicen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ge)wītan, go</td>
<td>(ge)witt</td>
<td>-wāt</td>
<td>-witon</td>
<td>-witen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wītan, hold</td>
<td>wītḥ</td>
<td>wīt</td>
<td>witon</td>
<td>witen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrītan, write</td>
<td>wrītḥ</td>
<td>wrāt</td>
<td>writon</td>
<td>writen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrīpan, writhe</td>
<td>wrīpḥ</td>
<td>wrāp</td>
<td>wrīpon</td>
<td>wrīpen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

202. A few verbs of this class have a consonantal change of ḏ to d in the preterit plural and past participle:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ḏipan, traverse</td>
<td>ḏipḥ</td>
<td>láp</td>
<td>lidon</td>
<td>liden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrīpān, glide</td>
<td>scrīpḥ</td>
<td>scrāp</td>
<td>scridon</td>
<td>scriden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snīpān, cut</td>
<td>snīpḥ</td>
<td>snāp</td>
<td>snidon</td>
<td>sniden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This change, together with that of h to g, and s to r, is known as Grammatical Change according to Verner's Law and was due originally in Primitive Germanic to a shift of accent in the last two principal parts. Grammatical Change, it should be noted, did not always occur. See, e.g., rīsan and wrīban in the above list.

203. A small group of verbs in this class have contracted infinitives, the result of the loss of an original h. (See Paragraph 20.) These verbs also have Grammatical Change, h to g:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>Lāh</th>
<th>Ligon</th>
<th>Ligen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lēon, lend</td>
<td>(līhū)</td>
<td>lāh</td>
<td>līgon</td>
<td>līgen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēon, strain</td>
<td>(sīhū)</td>
<td>sāh</td>
<td>sīgon</td>
<td>sīgen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēon, censure</td>
<td>(tīhū)</td>
<td>tāh</td>
<td>tīgon</td>
<td>tīgen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bēon, thrive</td>
<td>(bīhū)</td>
<td>bāh</td>
<td>bīgon</td>
<td>bīgen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrēon, cover</td>
<td>(wrīhū)</td>
<td>wraḥ</td>
<td>wrīgon</td>
<td>wrīgen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

204. The infinitive lēon was originally *līhan; breaking of the i resulted in *līohan; the loss of the h and the absorption of the unaccented vowel by the accented gave lēon, which in its later form was written lēon. A similar change may be traced in the other infinitives of this group with the exception of bēon, the original form of which was *bīhan before it became *bīhan. These verbs in their contracted forms look like those of Class II and for that reason they frequently may be found with forms of that class.

Class II

205. Gradation series: ēo, ū; ēa; u; o (Primitive Germanic, eu; au; u; u)

1 Verner stated that this change of consonants took place when the preceding vowel in the original word was unaccented. The last two principal parts in the Indo-European system were accented on the last syllable.

2 *bīhan was originally a Class III verb, the past participle of which, gebungen, excellent, exists as an adjective.
The most important verbs of this group follow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bêodan, command</td>
<td>(biëtt)</td>
<td>bêad</td>
<td>budon</td>
<td>boden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brêotan, break</td>
<td>(briëtt)</td>
<td>brêat</td>
<td>bruton</td>
<td>broten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brêowan, brew</td>
<td>(briëwp)</td>
<td>brêaw</td>
<td>bruwon</td>
<td>browen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cêowan, chew</td>
<td>(ciëwp)</td>
<td>cêaw</td>
<td>cuwon</td>
<td>cowen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cîëofan, cîave</td>
<td>(ciëwp)</td>
<td>cîëaf</td>
<td>clufon</td>
<td>clofen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crêopan, creep</td>
<td>(criëwp)</td>
<td>crêap</td>
<td>crupon</td>
<td>cropen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drêogan, endure (Scottish, dree)</td>
<td>(driëwp)</td>
<td>drêag</td>
<td>drugon</td>
<td>drogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drêopan, drip</td>
<td>(driëwp)</td>
<td>drêap</td>
<td>drupon</td>
<td>dropen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fîëogan, fly</td>
<td>(fiëwp)</td>
<td>fiëag</td>
<td>flugon</td>
<td>flugen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fîëotan, float</td>
<td>(fiëtt)</td>
<td>fiëat</td>
<td>fliton</td>
<td>floten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gêotan, pour</td>
<td>(giëtt)</td>
<td>gêat</td>
<td>guton</td>
<td>goten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grêotan, weep (Scottish, greet)</td>
<td>(giëtt)</td>
<td>grêat</td>
<td>grutron</td>
<td>groten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrêodan, adorn</td>
<td>(hriëtt)</td>
<td>hrêad</td>
<td>hrudon</td>
<td>hroden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrêowan, rue</td>
<td>(hriëwp)</td>
<td>hrêaw</td>
<td>hruwon</td>
<td>hrowen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lêogan, lie, deceive</td>
<td>(liëwp)</td>
<td>lêag</td>
<td>lugon</td>
<td>logen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nêotan, use</td>
<td>(niëtt)</td>
<td>nêat</td>
<td>nuton</td>
<td>noten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rêocan, reek</td>
<td>(riëwp)</td>
<td>rêac</td>
<td>rucon</td>
<td>rocen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rêodan, reddlen</td>
<td>(riëtt)</td>
<td>rêad</td>
<td>rudon</td>
<td>roden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rêotan, weep</td>
<td>(riëtt)</td>
<td>rêat</td>
<td>rution</td>
<td>roten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scêotan, shoot</td>
<td>(sciëtt)</td>
<td>scêat</td>
<td>scutron</td>
<td>scoten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brêotan, weary</td>
<td>(priëtt)</td>
<td>brêat</td>
<td>bruton</td>
<td>broten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

206. A few verbs in this group show Grammatical Change, in most cases the change being from s to r:

cêosan, choose (ciëst) | cêas | curon | coren
| drêosan, fall ( driëst ) | drêas | druron | droyen |
207. Two verbs have contracted infinitives as well as Grammatical Change:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frēosan, freeze</td>
<td>(friest)</td>
<td>frēas</td>
<td>fruron</td>
<td>froren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrēosan, fall</td>
<td>(hriest)</td>
<td>hrēas</td>
<td>hruron</td>
<td>hroren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēosan, lose</td>
<td>(liest)</td>
<td>lēas</td>
<td>luron</td>
<td>loren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēoðan, seethe</td>
<td>(sēað)</td>
<td>sudon</td>
<td>soden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

208. A small group of verbs in this class have ū for the vowel of the infinitive. The most important of these are the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brūcan, enjoy, use</td>
<td>(brūcā)</td>
<td>brūc</td>
<td>brūcon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būgan, bow</td>
<td>(būgā)</td>
<td>būg</td>
<td>būgon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crūdan, crowd</td>
<td>(cruēt)</td>
<td>crūd</td>
<td>crūdon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

209. Verbs of this group are characterized by having a short root vowel followed by two consonants, the first of which is usually a
nasal (n or m) or a liquid (l or r). The verbs may be subdivided into four groups, the most important verbs in each group being given below:

(1) Verbs with root syllable ending in a nasal plus a consonant.

Gradation series: i; a(o); u; u (Primitive Germanic e; a; u; u)

The change of e to i before a nasal was an early Primitive Germanic change. In the preterit a before a nasal was often written o in Old English. A list of such verbs follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bindan, bind</td>
<td>(bint)</td>
<td>band</td>
<td>bundon</td>
<td>bunden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climban, climb</td>
<td>(climbŋ)</td>
<td>clamb</td>
<td>clumbon</td>
<td>clumen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clingan, cling</td>
<td>(clingŋ)</td>
<td>clang</td>
<td>clungen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cringan, fall in battle</td>
<td>(cringŋ)</td>
<td>crang</td>
<td>crungen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drincan, drink</td>
<td>(drincŋ)</td>
<td>dranc</td>
<td>druncon</td>
<td>druncen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>findan, find</td>
<td>(fint)</td>
<td>fand</td>
<td>fundon</td>
<td>funden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(on)ginnan, begin</td>
<td>(-ginŋ)</td>
<td>-gann</td>
<td>-gunnon</td>
<td>-gunnen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grindan, grind</td>
<td>(grint)</td>
<td>grand</td>
<td>grundon</td>
<td>grunden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ge)limpan, happen</td>
<td>(-limpŋ)</td>
<td>-lamp</td>
<td>-lumpon</td>
<td>-lumpen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrincan, shrink</td>
<td>(scrincŋ)</td>
<td>scranc</td>
<td>scruncon</td>
<td>scruncen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sincan, sink</td>
<td>(sincŋ)</td>
<td>sanc</td>
<td>suncon</td>
<td>suncen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singan, sing</td>
<td>(singŋ)</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sungon</td>
<td>sugen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slincan, slink</td>
<td>(slincŋ)</td>
<td>slanc</td>
<td>sluncon</td>
<td>sluncen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinnan, spin</td>
<td>(spinŋ)</td>
<td>spanc</td>
<td>spuncon</td>
<td>spunnen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>springan, spring</td>
<td>(springŋ)</td>
<td>sprang</td>
<td>sprunon</td>
<td>sprungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stincan, smell</td>
<td>(stincŋ)</td>
<td>stanc</td>
<td>stuncon</td>
<td>stuncen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stingan, sting</td>
<td>(stingŋ)</td>
<td>stang</td>
<td>stungon</td>
<td>stungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimman, swim</td>
<td>(swimŋ)</td>
<td>swamm</td>
<td>swummon</td>
<td>swummen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swincan, labor</td>
<td>(swincŋ)</td>
<td>swanc</td>
<td>swuncon</td>
<td>swuncen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Findan has also a weak preterit, funde.
### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>swingan, <em>swing</em></td>
<td>(swingb)</td>
<td>swang</td>
<td>swungon</td>
<td>swungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bringan, <em>throng</em></td>
<td>(bringb)</td>
<td>brang</td>
<td>brungon</td>
<td>brungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windan, <em>wind</em></td>
<td>(wint)</td>
<td>wund</td>
<td>wundenon</td>
<td>wunden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winnan, <em>struggle</em></td>
<td>(winb)</td>
<td>wann</td>
<td>wunnon</td>
<td>wunnen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irnan, <em>run</em></td>
<td>(irnb)</td>
<td>arn</td>
<td>urnon</td>
<td>uren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This last verb was in Germanic *rinnan*, *rann*, *runnon*, *runnen*, the Old English forms being the result of metathesis.

2) Verbs with root syllable ending in 1 plus a consonant.

Gradation series: e (ie); ea; u; o

The ie in the infinitive occurs only after an initial palatal. (See Paragraph 14.) The vowel of the preterit singular in Primitive Germanic was a, which became æ in Old English in a closed syllable except before a nasal where, as has been shown above, it remained a; æ when followed by 1 plus a consonant broke to ea. (See Paragraph 13.) There are practically no examples of breaking in the infinitive of this group because e broke before 1 plus a consonant only when the consonant was c or h (see Paragraph 13), and that combination is very rare in these verbs. *Meolcan, to milk*, is one of the few cases extant. The following verbs belong to this group:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>belgan, <em>be angry</em></td>
<td>(bilgb)</td>
<td>bealg</td>
<td>bulgon</td>
<td>bolgen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delfan, <em>delve</em></td>
<td>(dilfp)</td>
<td>dealf</td>
<td>dulfon</td>
<td>dolfen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helpan, <em>help</em></td>
<td>(hilpp)</td>
<td>healp</td>
<td>hulpon</td>
<td>holpen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meltan, <em>melt</em></td>
<td>(milt)</td>
<td>mealt</td>
<td>multon</td>
<td>molten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swelgan, <em>swallow</em></td>
<td>(swilgb)</td>
<td>swealg</td>
<td>swulgon</td>
<td>svolgen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swellan, <em>swell</em></td>
<td>(swilb)</td>
<td>sweall</td>
<td>swullon</td>
<td>svollen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweltan, <em>die</em></td>
<td>(swilt)</td>
<td>swealt</td>
<td>swulton</td>
<td>svolten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
With an initial palatal:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Part 1</th>
<th>Part 2</th>
<th>Part 3</th>
<th>Part 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gieldan, <em>yield</em></td>
<td>(giełt)</td>
<td>geald</td>
<td>guldon</td>
<td>golden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giellan, <em>yell</em></td>
<td>(giełp)</td>
<td>geall</td>
<td>gullon</td>
<td>golren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gielpan, <em>boast</em></td>
<td>(giełpp)</td>
<td>gealp</td>
<td>gupilon</td>
<td>golpen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One verb in this group has a contracted infinitive and Grammatical Change: fēolan, to penetrate, originally *feolhan*. Its principal parts are fēolan; (fielhp); fealh; fulgon; folen or fōlen. The eo in *feolhan was the result of breaking before l plus h.

(3) Verbs with root syllable ending in r or h plus a consonant.

Gradation series: eo; ea; u; o

The vowel of the infinitive as well as that of the preterit singular has broken here. (See Paragraph 13.) Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Part 1</th>
<th>Part 2</th>
<th>Part 3</th>
<th>Part 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beorgan, <em>protect</em></td>
<td>(bierhp)</td>
<td>bearg</td>
<td>burgon</td>
<td>borgen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beornan, <em>burn</em></td>
<td>(bihnp)</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>burren</td>
<td>boren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceorfan, <em>carve</em></td>
<td>(ciernp)</td>
<td>cear</td>
<td>curfon</td>
<td>corfen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feohtan, <em>fight</em></td>
<td>(fieht)</td>
<td>feah</td>
<td>fuhton</td>
<td>fohten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hweorfan, <em>turn</em></td>
<td>(hwierhp)</td>
<td>hwear</td>
<td>hwurfon</td>
<td>hworgen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steorfan, <em>die</em></td>
<td>(stierhp)</td>
<td>stear</td>
<td>surfon</td>
<td>storfen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweorcan, <em>become dark</em></td>
<td>(swiercp)</td>
<td>swearc</td>
<td>swurcon</td>
<td>sworcen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weorpan, <em>throw</em></td>
<td>(wierhp)</td>
<td>wearp</td>
<td>wurpon</td>
<td>worpen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weordan, <em>become</em></td>
<td>(wierp)</td>
<td>weard</td>
<td>wurdon</td>
<td>worden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This last verb has Grammatical Change.

(4) Irregular verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Part 1</th>
<th>Part 2</th>
<th>Part 3</th>
<th>Part 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>berstan, <em>burst</em></td>
<td>(birst)</td>
<td>bærst</td>
<td>burston</td>
<td>borsten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perscan, <em>thresh</em></td>
<td>(pirscp)</td>
<td>bærsc</td>
<td>burscon</td>
<td>borscen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bregdan, <em>brandish</em></td>
<td>(brit)</td>
<td>bregd</td>
<td>brugdon</td>
<td>brogden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
or, with loss of g and lengthening of preceding vowel,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{brédan} & \quad \text{(britt)} \\
\text{stregdan, strew} & \quad \text{(stritt, strēt)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
brēd & \quad brūdōn & \quad brōden \\
strēgd & \quad strugdon & \quad strogdon
\end{align*}
\]

or, as above,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{strēdan} & \quad \text{(stritt, strēt)} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
strēd & \quad strūdōn & \quad strōden
\end{align*}
\]

Of these four verbs the first two, berstan and perscan, are irregular in that there is no breaking of the root vowels in the infinitive and preterit singular. These verbs were originally *brestan and *perscan and did not become metathesized to their present forms until after the period of breaking. The modern form of perscan, to thresh, shows a second metathesis, which brings the verb back to its original form. The other two verbs, bregdan and stregdan, are irregular in that none of their consonants is a liquid, a nasal, or an h.

Three other irregular verbs are the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{frignan, ask} & \quad \text{(frigneþ)} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
frægn & \quad frugnon & \quad frugnen \\
\end{align*}
\]

or, with loss of g and consequent lengthening of preceding vowel,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{frinan} & \quad \text{(frinþ)} \\
\text{murnan, mourn} & \quad \text{(myrnþ)} \\
\text{spurnan} & \quad \text{spurn} \\
\text{spornan} & \quad \text{sporn}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
frān & \quad frūnon & \quad frūnen \\
mearn & \quad murnon \\
\text{spearn} & \quad \text{spurnon} \\
\text{spornen}
\end{align*}
\]

Class IV

210. Verbs in this group have a short root vowel followed by one consonant, usually a liquid or a nasal. This is the smallest class of strong verbs, numbering only about a dozen.

Gradation series: e; æ; œ; o (Primitive Germanic, e; a; œ; u)
The principal verbs in this group follow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beran, bear</td>
<td>(birb)</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>bærón</td>
<td>boren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cwelan, die</td>
<td>(cwilp)</td>
<td>cwæl</td>
<td>cwælon</td>
<td>cwolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helan, conceal</td>
<td>(hilp)</td>
<td>hæl</td>
<td>hælon</td>
<td>holen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stelan, steal</td>
<td>(stilp)</td>
<td>stæl</td>
<td>stælon</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teran, tear</td>
<td>(tirp)</td>
<td>tær</td>
<td>tærón</td>
<td>toren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þweran, stir</td>
<td>(þwirp)</td>
<td>þwær</td>
<td>þwærón</td>
<td>þworen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

211. One verb in the group shows diphthongization in the first three parts because of the initial palatal (see Paragraph 14):
scieran, shear (scierp) scear scearon scoren

212. One verb should belong in Class V because of its consonant. It has, however, the vowel series of Class IV:
brencan, break (bricp) bræc bræcon brocen

213. The two verbs of the group which contain a nasal are also irregular:

niman, take (nimp)  nöm némon numen
          nam nám námon

cuman, come (clyp)  cóm cómon cumen
twöm twómon

The i in niman represents the change from Primitive Germanic e to i before a nasal. The o in némon and cómon is the result of the change of Germanic æ to á (Old English ð) before a nasal. The o in the preterit singular is by analogy with the plural; nam is more regular. The Germanic form of cuman had the w, which was lost after a consonant and preceding u or o.
214. Verbs belonging to this class have a short vowel in the root syllable followed by one consonant which is neither a liquid nor a nasal.

Gradation series: e; æ; Æ; e (Primitive Germanic, e; a; æ; e)

This vowel series, it will be noted, is the same as that of the fourth class with the exception of the past participle.

(1) The chief verbs in this class are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>(3d Sg)</th>
<th>Pret. Sg</th>
<th>Pret. Pl.</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cnedan, knead</td>
<td>(cnitt)</td>
<td>cnæd</td>
<td>cnædon</td>
<td>cneden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drepan, strike</td>
<td>(dripp)</td>
<td>dראp</td>
<td>dראpon</td>
<td>drepen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesan, collect</td>
<td>(list)</td>
<td>læs</td>
<td>læson</td>
<td>lesen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metan, measure</td>
<td>(mitt)</td>
<td>mæt</td>
<td>mæton</td>
<td>meten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ge)nesan, recover</td>
<td>(-nist)</td>
<td>-næs</td>
<td>-næson</td>
<td>-nesen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repan, reap</td>
<td>(ripb)</td>
<td>ræp</td>
<td>ræpon</td>
<td>repen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>screpan, scrape</td>
<td>(scripb)</td>
<td>scræp</td>
<td>scræpon</td>
<td>screpen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specan, speak</td>
<td>(spicb)</td>
<td>sp(r)æc</td>
<td>sp(r)æcon</td>
<td>sp(r)ecen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprecan</td>
<td>(spricb)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swefan, sleep</td>
<td>(swifp)</td>
<td>swæf</td>
<td>swæfon</td>
<td>swefen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tredan, tread</td>
<td>(tritt)</td>
<td>træd</td>
<td>trædon</td>
<td>treden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wefan, weave</td>
<td>(wifb)</td>
<td>wæf</td>
<td>wæfon</td>
<td>wefen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wegan, carry</td>
<td>(wigb)</td>
<td>wæg</td>
<td>wægon</td>
<td>wegen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrecan, wreak</td>
<td>(wricb)</td>
<td>wræc</td>
<td>wræcon</td>
<td>wrecen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Two verbs of this group have long instead of short æ in the preterit singular, probably by analogy with the preterit plural:

| etan, eat | (itt) | æt | æton | eten |
| fretan, devour | (fritt) | fræt | fræton | freten |
INFLECTION

(3) Two verbs have Grammatical Change:

cwēsan, speak  (cwip)  cwē  cwēdon  cweden
wesan, be  wēs  wēron

(4) Two verbs have their vowels diphthongized by the initial palatal:
giefan, give  (giefp)  geaf  gēafon  gifen
gietan, get  (giett)  geat  gēaton  gieten

(5) Three verbs in this group have contracted infinitives resulting from the loss of an original medial h; they also have breaking in the preterit singular before the final h, and Grammatical Change:

gefēon, rejoice  (gefēhp)  gefeah  gefēgon  gefegen
  (orig. *gefehan)  gefegen (adj.)
plēon, risk  (plēhp)  pleah
  (orig. *plehan)
seon, see  (siehp)  seah  sāwon  segon
  (orig. *sehwan)  segen

This last verb sometimes lost its h and sometimes its w, with the resultant double forms in the last two principal parts. The w forms are found more often.

(6) Four important verbs in this class are known as -jan presents because originally their infinitives ended in -jan, the j causing mutation of the root vowel and gemination of the final consonant, the gemination of g being cg; the other principal parts are regular:

biddan, ask, bid  (bitt)  bād  bādon  beden
  (orig. *bedjan)
līgan, lie  (līhp)  læg  lægon  legen
  (orig. *legjan)
Infinitive  
\[ \text{(3d Sg. Pret. Sg. Pret. Pl. Past Part.)} \]

**sittan, sit**  
(Orig. *setjan)

**picgan, receive**  
(Orig. *Þegjan)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(sitt)</th>
<th>sæt</th>
<th>sæton</th>
<th>seten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>sittan, sit</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>picgan, receive</strong></td>
<td>(þigeþ)</td>
<td>þeh</td>
<td>þah</td>
<td>þægon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Class VI**

215. Gradation series: a; ð; ð; a (Primitive Germanic, a; ð; ð; a)

(1) The following are the most important verbs in this class:

- **alan, nourish**
  - (ælp)  
  - òl
  - òlon
  - alen

- **bacan, bake**
  - (bæčþ)
  - bóc
  - bōcon
  - bacen

- **dragan, draw**
  - (draegþ)
  - dróg
  - drōgon
  - dragen

- **faran, go, fare**
  - (færþ)
  - för
  - förön
  - faren

- **galan, sing**
  - (gælp)
  - gōl
  - gōlon
  - galen

- **gnagan, gnaw**
  - (gnægþ)
  - gnóg
  - gnōgon
  - gnagen

- **grafan, dig**
  - (græfþ)
  - grōf
  - grōfon
  - grafen

- **hladan, load**
  - (hlaett)
  - hlōd
  - hlōdon
  - hladen

- **sacan, contend**
  - (sæcþ)
  - sōc
  - sōcon
  - sacen

- **scacan, shake**
  - (scæcþ)
  - scōc
  - scōcon
  - scacen

- **scaf an, shave**
  - (scæfþ)
  - scōf
  - scōfon
  - scafen

- **spanan, seduce**
  - (spænþ)
  - spōn
  - spōnon
  - spanen

- **standan, stand**
  - (stent)
  - stōd
  - stōdon
  - standen

- **tacan, take**
  - (tæcþ)
  - tōc
  - tōcon
  - tacen

- **wacan, wake**
  - (wæcþ)
  - wōc
  - wōcon
  - wacen

- **wadan, go, wade**
  - (wætt)
  - wōd
  - wōdon
  - waden

- **wascan, wash**
  - (wæscþ)
  - wōsc
  - wōscon
  - wascen

The verbs scacan and scafan given above sometimes appear in a diphthongized form which is the result of the initial palatal:
sceacan, sceœc, sceœcon, sceacen; sceafan, sceœf, sceœfon, sceafen.
(See Paragraph 14, note.) The verb spanan has also a preterit spœon, spœonon like that of Class VII.

(2) Four verbs in this group have contracted infinitives resulting from the loss of a medial h; they also show Grammatical Change:

fleæan, flay (fliehþ) flōh, flōg flōgon flagen
(Orig. *flahan)

lēan, blame (liehþ) lōh, lōg lōgon lægen, legen
(Orig. *lahan)

slēan, slay (sliehþ) slōh, slōg slōgon slagen, slægen
(Orig. *slahan)

þwēan, wash (þwiehþ) þwōh, þwōg þwōgon þwægen
(Orig. *þwahan)

The changes taking place in these infinitives may be exemplified by slēan. The original *slahan became *slæhan, Germanic a becoming æ before h; this in turn broke to *sleahan and then was contracted to slēan, the vowel being lengthened when the h was lost.

(3) Six verbs in this class, like the similar group in Class V, are known as -jan presents. They have a mutated root vowel and gemination in the infinitive. It is to be remembered that the gemination of f is bb and that the letter r never geminates, the j in words containing an r remaining as an i. The list follows:

hebban, raise, heave (hefþ) hōf hōfon hafan
(Orig. *hæfjan, Gothic hafjan)

bliehhan, laugh (hliehþ) hlōh hlōgon
(Orig. *hlæhjan, Gothic hlahjan)
In the above list hliehhan and sceðsan have Grammatical Change, the d in sceðd being by analogy with the plural form. In sceppan the original a was mutated to e which in turn was diphthongized to ie by the initial palatal. This change should also have occurred in sceðan. The eo in the preterit of sceðan and sceppan was caused by the initial palatal. The Gothic forms are given above because they show the original Germanic a in the stem. This a was changed to æ in Old English because it occurred in a closed syllable. The æ mutated to e.

Class VII

216. The last class of strong verbs differs from the other six in having no regular gradation series. These verbs are often called reduplicating verbs because it is supposed that originally they formed their preterits by prefixing to the root syllable a syllable composed of the initial consonant of the verb plus e, as, for example, the preterit of hātan, *he-hāt which became hēht and then hēt.
This process of reduplication exists in Gothic, but it has almost completely disappeared in other Germanic languages. Only a few verbs in Old English show any evidences of it by still preserving two preterits, the first of which as given below is the reduplicating form:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hātan: } & \text{ hēht, hēt (Goth. hātan, haḥāit)} \\
\text{lācan: } & \text{ leolc, lēc (Goth. láikan, laflāik)} \\
\text{lētan: } & \text{ leort, lēt (Goth. lētan, laflōt)} \\
\text{rādan: } & \text{ reord, rēd (Goth. ga-rēdan, ga-raɪrōp)}
\end{align*}
\]

Since the evidence of reduplication in Old English is meagre, it seems preferable to designate these verbs merely as Class VII.

217. The infinitive of these verbs may have various vowels. These are ā, ēa, a followed by a nasal, ea, ē, ē, many of which it will be noticed are the vowels of the preterits of the first six classes. The singular and plural of the preterit have the same vowel, either ē or ēc but more commonly the latter, and on the basis of this preterit vowel the verbs are divided into two main classes. The vowel of the past participle is that of the infinitive.

\[(a) \text{ Preterits in } ē\]

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{Infinitive} & \text{Pres.} & \text{Pret. Sg.} & \text{Pret. Pl.} & \text{Past Part.} \\
\hline
\text{hātan, be called} & (\text{hāt}) & \text{hēht, hēt} & \text{hēton} & \text{hāten} \\
\text{lācan, leap} & (\text{lēc}) & \text{leolc, lēc} & \text{lēcon} & \text{lācen} \\
\text{scādan, separate} & (\text{scāt}) & \text{scēd} & \text{scēdon} & \text{scāden} \\
\text{scēadan} & & \text{scēad} & \text{scēadon} & \text{scēaden} \\
\hline
\text{blandan, blend} & (\text{blent}) & \text{blēnd} & \text{blēndon} & \text{blanden} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]
The verbs ondrēdan and slēpan sometimes have the weak preterits ondrēdde and slēpte, and rādan is usually weak, rēdde.

Two contract verbs belong to this group:

(b) **Preterits in ēo**

(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(on)drēdan, dread</td>
<td>(-drētt)</td>
<td>-dreord, -drēd</td>
<td>-drēdon</td>
<td>-drēden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lētan, let</td>
<td>(lētt)</td>
<td>leort, lēt</td>
<td>lēton</td>
<td>lēten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rādan, counsel</td>
<td>(rātt)</td>
<td>reord, rēd</td>
<td>rēdon</td>
<td>rēden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slēpan, sleep</td>
<td>(slēpp)</td>
<td>slēp</td>
<td>slēpon</td>
<td>slēpen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fēn, seize</td>
<td>(fēhp)</td>
<td>fēng</td>
<td>fēngon</td>
<td>fangen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōn, hang</td>
<td>(hēhp)</td>
<td>hēng</td>
<td>hēngon</td>
<td>hangen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blāwan, blow</td>
<td>(blēwp)</td>
<td>blēow</td>
<td>blēowon</td>
<td>blāwen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cnāwan, know</td>
<td>(cnēwp)</td>
<td>cnēow</td>
<td>cnēowon</td>
<td>cnāwen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crāwan, crow</td>
<td>(crēwp)</td>
<td>crēow</td>
<td>crēowon</td>
<td>crāwen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māwan, mow</td>
<td>(mēwp)</td>
<td>mēow</td>
<td>mēowon</td>
<td>māwen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāwan, sow</td>
<td>(sēwp)</td>
<td>sēow</td>
<td>sēowon</td>
<td>sāwen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swāpan, swrep</td>
<td>(swēpp)</td>
<td>swēop</td>
<td>swēopon</td>
<td>swāpen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bēatan, beat</td>
<td>(biett)</td>
<td>bēot</td>
<td>bēoton</td>
<td>bēaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hēawan, hew</td>
<td>(hiewp)</td>
<td>hēow</td>
<td>hēowon</td>
<td>hēawen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## INFLECTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Inflection</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Preterit Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>błęapan, leap</td>
<td>(hliepb)</td>
<td>hlep</td>
<td>hlepon</td>
<td>hlep</td>
<td>hlep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)hnęapan, pluck</td>
<td>(-hniepb)</td>
<td>-hnep</td>
<td>-hnöpon</td>
<td>-hnep</td>
<td>-hnep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fealdan, fold</td>
<td>(fielt)</td>
<td>fëold</td>
<td>fëoldon</td>
<td>fealden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feallan, fall</td>
<td>(fielp)</td>
<td>fëoll</td>
<td>fëollon</td>
<td>feallen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healdan, hold</td>
<td>(hielt)</td>
<td>hëold</td>
<td>hëoldon</td>
<td>healden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealcan, roll</td>
<td>(wieelp)</td>
<td>wëolc</td>
<td>wëolcon</td>
<td>wealcen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealdan, wield</td>
<td>(wielpt)</td>
<td>wëold</td>
<td>wëoldon</td>
<td>wealden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weallan, well</td>
<td>(wielpt)</td>
<td>wëoli</td>
<td>wëollon</td>
<td>weallen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weaxan, grow, wax</td>
<td>(wiest)</td>
<td>wëox</td>
<td>wëoxon</td>
<td>weaxen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb weaxan was originally waxan and belonged to Class VI; the preterits wōx and wōxon also exist.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Inflection</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Preterit Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bannan, summon</td>
<td>(banc, ben)</td>
<td>bëonn</td>
<td>bëonnon</td>
<td>bannen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gangan, go</td>
<td>(gangeč, genc)</td>
<td>gëong</td>
<td>gëongon</td>
<td>gangen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spannan, attach</td>
<td>(spanč)</td>
<td>spëonn</td>
<td>spëonnon</td>
<td>spannen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These three verbs also have their preterits in ĕ.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Inflection</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Preterit Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blōtan, sacrifice</td>
<td>(blët)</td>
<td>blëot</td>
<td>blëoton</td>
<td>blōten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blōwan, bloom</td>
<td>(blëwp)</td>
<td>blëow</td>
<td>blëowon</td>
<td>blōwen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flōwan, flow</td>
<td>(flëwp)</td>
<td>flëow</td>
<td>flëowon</td>
<td>flōwen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grōwan, grow</td>
<td>(grëwp)</td>
<td>grëow</td>
<td>grëowon</td>
<td>grōwen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrōpan, shout</td>
<td>(hrëpp)</td>
<td>hrëop</td>
<td>hrëopon</td>
<td>hrōpen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hwōpan, threaten</td>
<td>(hwëpp)</td>
<td>hwëop</td>
<td>hwëopon</td>
<td>hwōpen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōwan, row</td>
<td>(rëwp)</td>
<td>rëow</td>
<td>rëowon</td>
<td>rōwen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spōwan, succeed</td>
<td>(spëwp)</td>
<td>spëow</td>
<td>spëowon</td>
<td>spōwen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Two verbs are -jan presents:

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{hwēsan, wheeze} & \text{(hwēst)} & \text{hwēos} & \text{hwēson} \\
(\text{orig. } *\text{hwōsjan}) & & & \\
\text{wēpan, weep} & \text{(wēpē)} & \text{wēop} & \text{wēopon} \\
(\text{orig. } *\text{wōpjan}) & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS

218. The conjugation of the seven classes of strong verbs may be seen from the following paradigms: I, bitan, to bite; II, frēosan, to freeze, lūcan, to lock; III, windan, to wind, weorSan, to become; IV, teran, to tear; V, cweban, to speak; VI, sacan, to contend; VII, wealdan, to wield. These are followed by the paradigms of two contract verbs, flSon, to flee (II) and fon, to seize (VII), and of the -jan present verbs, licgan, to lie (V) and swerian, to swear (VI).

**Indicative**

*Present*

| Sing. 1. bite | frēose | lūce | winde | weorēpe |
| 2. bitest, bitst | friest | lycst | windest, wintst | wierst |
| 3. bitep, bitt | friest | lycp | windep, wint | wierp |

*Pl. 1–3. bitaþ* | frēosaþ | lūcaþ | windaþ | weorþaþ |

*Preterit*

| Sing. 1. bāt | frēas | lēac | wand | wearþ |
| 2. bite | frure | luce | wunde | wurde |
| 3. bāt | frēas | lēac | wand | wearþ |

*Pl. 1–3. biton* | fruron | lucon | wundon | wurdon |

**Subjunctive**

*Present*

| Sing. 1–3. bite | frēose | lūce | winde | weorēpe |
| Pl. 1–3. biten | frēosen | lūcen | winden | weorēpes |
INFLECTION

Preterit

Sing. 1–3. bite  frure  luce  wunde  wurde
Pl. 1–3. biten  fruren  lucen  wunden  wurden

Imperative

Sing. 2. bit  frēos  lūc  wind  weorp
Pl. 2. bitaþ  frēosæþ  lūcaþ  windaþ  weorþaþ

Infinitive

bitan  frēosan  lūcan  windan  weorþan

Gerund

tō bitenne  tō frēosenne  tō lūcenne  tō windenne  tō weorþenne
(-anne)  (-anne)  (-anne)  (-anne)  (-anne)

Present Participle

bitende  frēosende  lūcende  windende  weorþende

Past Participle

(ge)biten  (ge)froen  (ge)locen  (ge)wunden  (ge)worden

Indicative

Present

Sing. 1. tere  cweþe  sace  wealde
2. tirst  cwist  sæcst  wëlstst
3. tirþ  cwiþþ  sæcþ  wëlt
Pl. 1–3. teraþ  cweþaþ  sacaþ  wëlðaþ

Preterit

Sing. 1. tær  cwæþ  sōc  wēold
2. tære  cwædde  sōce  wēolde
3. tær  cwæþ  sōc  wēold
Pl. 1–3. tæron  cwædon  sōcon  wēoldon
### SUBJUNCTIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cweþe</th>
<th>sace</th>
<th>wealde</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1-3. tere</td>
<td>cweþe</td>
<td>sace</td>
<td>wealde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 1-3. teren</td>
<td>cweþen</td>
<td>sacen</td>
<td>wealden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Preterit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cwæde</th>
<th>söce</th>
<th>wēolde</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1-3. tēre</td>
<td>cwæde</td>
<td>söce</td>
<td>wēolde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 1-3. tēren</td>
<td>cwæden</td>
<td>söcen</td>
<td>wēolden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cweþ</th>
<th>sac</th>
<th>weald</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 2. ter</td>
<td>cweþ</td>
<td>sac</td>
<td>weald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 2. teraþ</td>
<td>cweþaþ</td>
<td>sacaþ</td>
<td>wealdaþ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cweþan</th>
<th>sacan</th>
<th>wealdan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>teran</td>
<td>cweþan</td>
<td>sacan</td>
<td>wealdan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gerund**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>tō cweþenne</th>
<th>tō sacenne</th>
<th>tō wealde(n)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(-anne)</td>
<td>(-anne)</td>
<td>(-anne)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cweþende</th>
<th>sacende</th>
<th>wealdende</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terende</td>
<td>cweþende</td>
<td>sacende</td>
<td>wealdende</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(ge)cwen</th>
<th>(ge)sac</th>
<th>(ge)weald</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ge)toren</td>
<td>(ge)cwen</td>
<td>(ge)sac</td>
<td>(ge)weald</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Contract and -jan Present Verbs

**Indicative**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fō</th>
<th>licge</th>
<th>swerie</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. flēo</td>
<td>fō</td>
<td>licge</td>
<td>swerie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fliehst</td>
<td>fēhst</td>
<td>lig(e)st</td>
<td>swerest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fliehþ</td>
<td>fēþ</td>
<td>lig(e)þ, līþ</td>
<td>swereþ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 1-3. flēþ</td>
<td>fōþ</td>
<td>licgāþ</td>
<td>sweriaþ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**INFLECTION**

**Preterit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing. 1–3. fleah</th>
<th>2. fluge</th>
<th>3. fleah</th>
<th>Pl. 1–3. flugon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td>fēng</td>
<td>læg</td>
<td>swōr</td>
<td>swōre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td>fēngon</td>
<td>lægon</td>
<td>swōron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing. 1–3. flēo</th>
<th>Pl. 1–3. flēon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td>fō</td>
<td>licge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td>fōn</td>
<td>licgen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Preterit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing. 1–3. fluge</th>
<th>Pl. 1–3. flugen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td>fēnge</td>
<td>læge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td>fēngen</td>
<td>lægen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing. 2. fleoh</th>
<th>Pl. 2. fleop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td>fōh</td>
<td>lige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td>fōp</td>
<td>licgap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fleon</th>
<th>fōn</th>
<th>licgan</th>
<th>swerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>tō fleonne</th>
<th>tō fōnne</th>
<th>tō licgenne</th>
<th>tō swerienne</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ge)fleonne</td>
<td>(ge)fōnne</td>
<td>(ge)licgenne</td>
<td>(ge)swerienne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fleonde</th>
<th>fōnde</th>
<th>licgende</th>
<th>sweriende</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PARTICIPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(ge)flogen</th>
<th>(ge)fangen</th>
<th>(ge)legen</th>
<th>(ge)sworen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ge)flogan</td>
<td>(ge)fangen</td>
<td>(ge)legen</td>
<td>(ge)sworen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES ON THE CONJUGATIONS

219. (1) The root vowel, if a vowel affected by mutation, is mutated in the 2d and 3d persons singular of the present indicative. This mutation was caused by i of the original endings, ist and ist. A brief table of these mutations follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Root Vowel</th>
<th>Mutation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>eo, ü</td>
<td>ie, y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ie</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eo</td>
<td>ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>æ, ẹ, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>å</td>
<td>æ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ã</td>
<td>Æ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ő</td>
<td>Æ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ȩ</td>
<td>Æ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ę</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) The regular endings of the 2d and 3d persons of the present indicative are -est and -eb, but the e of these endings is often syncopated, and in such cases, when the root of the verb ends in d, t, p, s, or g, this final consonant is assimilated. The following is a list of these syncopations and assimilations:

1 æ is not a mutation here but the change of a to æ described in Par. 12.
INFLECTION

dest by syncopation becomes dst, by assimilation, tst
Example: ḡū rīdest > ḡū rīdst > ḡū rītst
dēp by syncopation becomes dēp, by assimilation, t or tt
Example: ḡē rīdep > ḡē rīdp > ḡē rīt(t)
test by syncopation becomes tst
Example: ḡū lātest > ḡū lātst
tēp by syncopation becomes tēp, by assimilation, t or tt
Example: ḡē lātep > ḡē lātp > ḡē lāt(t)
ḥest > ḡest > tst or st
Examples: ḡū snīḥest > ḡū snīḥst > ḡū snītst; ḡū wierḥest > ḡū wierḥst > ḡū wierst
ḥēp > ḡēp > ḡē
Example: ḡē snīḥēp > ḡē snīḥēp > ḡē snīhp
sēst > sst > st
Example: ḡū rīsēst > ḡū rīsst > ḡū rīst
sēp > sēp > st
Example: ḡē rīsep > ḡē rīsp > ḡē rīst
gest > gst > hst (sometimes)
Example: ḡū fliegest > ḡū fliegst > ḡū fliehst
gēp > gēp > hēp (sometimes)
Example: ḡē fliegeh > ḡē fliegēp > ḡē fliehēp

The unsyncopated forms usually occur without mutation and the syncopated forms with it, as, for example, ḡē berep and ḡē birp, but this rule is not always followed. Mutation preceded syncopation and the unmutated, unsyncopated forms appeared later by analogy with the unmutated plural.

(3) In the -jan presents there is no gemination of the root consonant in the 2d and 3d person singular present indicative, as, for example, biddan, to ask, ḡū bidest, ḡē bidep. Gemination is
also lacking in the singular imperative, which has the ending e, as, for example, bide.

(4) When the plural pronouns wē, gē, used as subjects, follow rather than precede the verb, the verbal ending usually is -e. This probably originated in the present subjunctive where the final n of the plural was sometimes lost, but by analogy the practice was also extended to the present and preterit indicative and the imperative. We find therefore the two forms, wē standað and stande wē, we stand; gē fēollon and fēolle gē, you fell; rīsað and rise gē, rise.

(5) The vowel of the preterit plural indicative is also the vowel of the 2d person singular preterit indicative, which was probably originally a subjunctive, and of the entire preterit subjunctive.

(6) The gerund was originally the dative case of the infinitive declined as a verbal noun. To, which in modern English we connect with the infinitive, is the preposition governing the dative, and the ending is -enne or by analogy with the infinitive, -anne.

(7) The present participle may be declined as a strong or weak adjective, like dēore (ja-, jo- stem). Its declension as a strong adjective follows.

Paradigm: brecende, breaking.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>brecende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>brecendes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>brecendum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>brecende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins.</td>
<td>brecende</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFLECTION

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>brecende</td>
<td>brecenda, -e</td>
<td>brecendu, -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>brecendra</td>
<td>brecendra</td>
<td>brecendra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>brecendum</td>
<td>brecendum</td>
<td>brecendum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When used as a predicate the present participle is usually not declined. When used as a noun it is declined like the -nd stems. (See Paragraph 134.)

(8) The past participle is found either with or without ge as a prefix. It may be declined as a strong or weak adjective belonging to the a-o-declension. As a predicate it is usually not declined, but may be declined to indicate a difference in meaning. For example, the clause, ðā hīe hæfdon Samson gefangen (when they had seized Samson), emphasizes the act of seizing, while ðā hīe Samson gefangenne hæfdon (when they had Samson seized), emphasizes the condition of the person mentioned.

WEAK VERBS

220. Weak verbs constitute the largest class of Old English verbs. They form their preterit tense and past participle not by a change of root vowel but by the addition of a suffix containing d or t to the root, a formation peculiar to the Germanic languages. The majority of them are derivatives, having nouns, adjectives, or strong verbs as roots, to which a suffix was added. The nature of this suffix differentiated the weak verbs into three classes.

CLASS I

221. Verbs of this group were formed by adding the suffix -jan to a noun, adjective, or strong verb. The j caused mutation of the root vowel and, when this vowel was short, gemination of the
final radical consonant if single, with subsequent loss of the j. If the consonant was r there was no gemination and the j remained as an i. When the root vowel was long there was mutation but no gemination.\(^1\) A list of some of the verbs in this group in which the derivation may be seen, follows:

(1) *Derivation from Nouns*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Derivation from Nouns</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bōt (remedy) + jan</td>
<td>bētan, <em>to provide a remedy</em>, i.e., <em>to amend</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuss (kiss) + jan</td>
<td>cyssan, <em>to kiss</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēl (part) + jan</td>
<td>dēlan, <em>to deal out</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōm (judgment) + jan</td>
<td>dēman, <em>to judge</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsam (joy) + jan</td>
<td>drēman (drieman), <em>to rejoice</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēr (journey) + jan</td>
<td>ferian, <em>to carry</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēsam (flight) + jan</td>
<td>(ge)fēiman, <em>to put to flight</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōda (food) + jan</td>
<td>fēdan, <em>to feed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frēfor (comfort) + jan</td>
<td>frēfran, <em>to comfort</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelēafa (belief) + jan</td>
<td>gelēfan, <em>to believe</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heorte (heart) + jan</td>
<td>hyrtan (hiertan), <em>to hearten</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lāf (leaving) + jan</td>
<td>lēfan, <em>to leave</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lār (lore) + jan</td>
<td>lēran, <em>to teach</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>léoht (light) + jan</td>
<td>lēhtan (liehtan), <em>to shine</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lust (pleasure) + jan</td>
<td>lystan, <em>to list, desire</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nama (name) + jan</td>
<td>nemnan, <em>to name</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēd (advice) + jan</td>
<td>rēdan, <em>to advise</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāl (rope) + jan</td>
<td>sēlan, <em>to fasten</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrūd (clothing) + jan</td>
<td>scrēdan, <em>to clothe</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>searu (skill) + jan</td>
<td>syrwan (sierwan), <em>to plot</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spēd (success) + jan</td>
<td>spēdan, <em>to succeed</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The infinitives of the 1st class weak verbs resemble those of the small group of -jan present verbs in the 6th class of the strong conjugation.
INFLECTION

storm (storm) + jan = styrman (stierman), to storm
swēg (sound) + jan = swēgan, to sound
burst (thirst) + jan = ðyrstan, to thirst after
weorc (work) + jan = wyrcan, to work

(2) Derivation from Adjectives

beald (bold) + jan = byldan (bieldan), to embolden
blēc (pale) + jan = blēcan, to bleach
brād (broad) + jan = brāadan, to spread
cūp (known) + jan = cūpan, to make known
eald (old) + jan = ieldan, to delay
feorr (far) + jan = (a)fyrran (fierran), to remove
full (full) + jan = fyllan, to fill
fūs (ready) + jan = fūsan, to prepare
gorn (eager) + jan = giernan, to be eager, yearn
hwæt (bold) + jan = hwettan, to whet, incite
mære (famous) + jan = mæran, to make famous
rūm (roomy) + jan = ryman, to make room
scearp (sharp) + jan = scierpan, to sharpen
trum (strong) + jan = trymman, to strengthen
wōd (mad) + jan = wēdan, to be mad

(3) Derivation from Strong Verbs

In this group the weak verbs are usually transitive or causative forms of the intransitive strong verbs. The root of the weak verb has the same vowel as the preterit singular of the strong verb.

bāt (pret. of bitan, to bite) + jan = bētan, to bit, bridle
bēah (pret. of būgan, to bend) + jan = biegan, to cause to bend
cwæl (pret. of cwelan, to die) + jan = cwellan, to kill
dranc (pret. of drincan, to drink) + jan = drencan, to drench
fēoll (pret. of feallan, to fall) + jan = fyllan (fiellan), to fell
108 GRAMMAR

for (pret. of faran, to go) + jan = fēran, to go, lead
hwearf (pret. of hweorfan, to turn) + jan = hwierfan, to move about
læg (pret. of licgan, to lie) + jan = lecgan, to lay
rās (pret. of risan, to rise) + jan = rēran, to rear, raise (Verner’s Law)
sæt (pret. of sittan, to sit) + jan = settan, to set
sprang (pret. of springan, to spring) + jan = sprengan, to break
swæf (pret. of swefan, to sleep) + jan = swebban, to put to sleep, kill
swanc (pret. of swincan, to labor) + jan = swencan, to press hard
wand (pret. of windan, to wind) + jan = wendan, to turn around, wend
wearp (pret. of weorpan, to throw) + jan = (ge)wyrpan (wierpan), to recover

222. The infinitive of verbs of Class I, as seen from the above lists, ends in -an or, if the final root consonant is r, in -ian. The preterit singular is formed by adding -ede, -de, or -te, and the past participle, by adding, -ed, -d, -t, to the root. These three constitute the principal parts of the verb.

223. There are two main divisions of the regular verbs of this class: (1) those with an originally short radical syllable and (2) those with an originally long radical syllable. Verbs with a short vowel or diphthong followed by a geminated consonant or r belong to the first group, as, for example, trymman, to strengthen, werian, to defend; those with a long vowel or diphthong, or with a short vowel or diphthong followed by two consonants or by a double consonant not caused by gemination belong to the second, as, for example, lēran, to teach, pyrstan, to thirst, fyllan, to fill. In most cases a double consonant is the result of gemination. In fyllan, which comes from the adjective full, or cyssan, from the noun cuss,
the double consonant appears in the root and is therefore not caused by gemination.

224. Verbs with an originally short radical syllable form their preterit singular and past participle by adding -ede and -ed respectively to the root. The e of this suffix was originally i, which caused mutation of the root vowel but no gemination in the preterit and past participle. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>3d Sg. Pres.</th>
<th>Pret. Sing.</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trymman, strengthen</td>
<td>(trymeþ)</td>
<td>trymede</td>
<td>trymed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>werian, defend</td>
<td>(wereþ)</td>
<td>werede</td>
<td>wered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

225. Like trymman are cnyssan, to beat, dynnan, to resound, fremman, to perform, hreddan, to save, settan, to set, treddan, to tread, etc. Lecgan, to lay, is an exception, because although its root syllable is short it forms its preterit and past participle without the e of the suffix; for example, lecgan, legde, legd.

226. Like werian are derian, to injure, erian, to plow, herian, to praise, nerian, to save, styrian, to stir. This is a very small group.

227. Verbs with an originally long radical syllable form their preterit singular and past participle by adding -de and -ed, respectively, to the root, syncopation of the middle vowel having taken place in the preterit. As in the case of the verbs with a short radical syllable, this original middle vowel i, before it was syncopated, caused mutation but not gemination. Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>3d Sg. Pres.</th>
<th>Pret. Sing.</th>
<th>Part</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>læran, teach</td>
<td>(lærþ)</td>
<td>lærde</td>
<td>læred</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like læran are ælan, to kindle, cypan, to make known, dælan, to deal out, dæman, to judge, færán, to go, geflieman, to put to
228. Verbs with a long radical syllable ending in two consonants, the second of which is l, n, or r, usually keep the middle vowel in the preterit. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dieglan, conceal</td>
<td>(dieglep)</td>
<td>dieglede</td>
<td>(ge)diegled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>efnan, perform</td>
<td>(efnep)</td>
<td>efneede</td>
<td>(ge)efned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frêfran, comfort</td>
<td>(frêfrep)</td>
<td>frêfrede</td>
<td>(ge)frêfred</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONJUGATION

229. Paradigms: trymman, to strengthen; werian, to defend, læran, to teach.

INDICATIVE

Present

Sing. 1. trymme    werie      lære
    2. trymest   werest     lær(e)st
    3. trymeð    wereð      lær(e)ð

Pl. 1–3. trymmað   weriað     lærað

Preterit

Sing. 1. trymede   werede     lærde
    2. trymedest weredest    lærdest
    3. trymede    werede     lærde

Pl. 1–3. trymedon  weredon    lærdon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

Sing. 1–3. trymme  werie      lære

Pl. 1–3. trymmen  werien     læren
### INFLECTION

#### Preterit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. 1–3.</th>
<th>Pl. 1–3.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd person singular</td>
<td>3rd person plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trymede</td>
<td>werede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trymeden</td>
<td>wereden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. 2.</th>
<th>Pl. 2.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd person singular</td>
<td>2nd person plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tryme</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trymmað</td>
<td>weriað</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>trymman</th>
<th>werian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tô trymmenne</th>
<th>tô werienne</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tô lârenne (anne)</td>
<td>tô lârenne (anne)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>trymmende</th>
<th>weriende</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lârende</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(ge)trymed</th>
<th>(ge)wered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ge)lâred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

230. It will be noted that there is no gemination in the 2d and 3d persons singular present indicative, in the entire preterit indicative and subjunctive, in the singular imperative, and in the past participle of the verbs with an originally short radical syllable like trymman. This is due to the fact that originally there was i but not j in the suffix of all these forms, the i causing mutation but not gemination.

231. Syncopation of e in the endings of the 2d and 3d persons singular present indicative of verbs with an originally long radical syllable often occurs, as, for example, lârst, lârð, but the unsyncopated forms may also be found, as, for example, lârest, lârð.
The same assimilation of consonants found in these two forms in strong verbs also occurs in weak verbs of the first class. (See Paragraph 219, (2).)

232. Various contractions occur in the preterit and past participle:

(1) Verbs with an originally short radical syllable ending in d or t syncopate the middle vowel (t + d becomes tt), as, for example, treddan, to tread, tredde instead of tredede, (ge)tred(d) instead of (ge)treded; settan, to set, sette, sett. Verbs with an originally long radical syllable ending in d or t often syncopate the middle vowel in the past participle, as, for example, lēdan, to lead, lēdde, lēd(d); grētan, to greet, grētte, grē(t).

(2) Verbs with a radical syllable ending in a consonant plus d or t simplify their preterits and past participles; for example, sendan, to send, sende, send; ēyrstan, to thirst, ēyrste, ēyrst.

(3) Verbs with a double consonant in the root simplify the consonant in the preterit; for example, fyllan, to fill, fyld, but (ge)fyll with double l.

(4) Verbs with a root syllable ending in a voiceless consonant change the d of the preterit and sometimes that of the past participle to t; for example, clyppan, to embrace, clypte, (ge)clypt; swencan, to press hard, swencte, (ge)swenced or (ge)swent; cys-an, to kiss, cys-te, (ge)cysed or (ge)cyst.

(5) Verbs with a root syllable ending in p may change it to d before the preterit ending; for example, cŷían, to make known, cŷde or cŷdde, (ge)cŷd̆ed or (ge)cŷdd.

(6) Verbs in rw and lw often lose w before e of the preterit and past participle; for example, sierwan, to plot, sierde, (ge)sier wed, (ge)siered. The w is also lost in the 2d and 3d persons singular present indicative and in the singular imperative.
VERBS WITHOUT THE MIDDLE VOWEL

233. A small but important group of first class weak verbs differs from the others in having no mutation in the preterit or past participle. The infinitives of these verbs had the original suffix -jan which caused mutation in the present stem, but the middle vowel -i, which caused mutation in the preterit stem of other Class I verbs, was lacking, with the consequent loss of mutation. Many of these verbs have c or g for the final radical consonant, which, plus d of the preterit suffix, became ht. Many of the preterits also have the consonant combination which produces breaking. The formation of these verbs may be seen from the following example:

cwæl (preterit of cwelan, to die) + jan = cwæljan, which by mutation and gemination = cwellan, to kill; cwæl + de, without the original middle vowel i and therefore without mutation = cwælde, which, since ae breaks to ea before l + a consonant = cwælde.

234. A list of these verbs follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cwellan, kill</td>
<td>(cwelb)</td>
<td>cwealde</td>
<td>(ge)cweald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwellan, dwell</td>
<td>(dwelb)</td>
<td>dwealde</td>
<td>(ge)dweald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sellan, give</td>
<td>(selb)</td>
<td>sealde</td>
<td>(ge)seald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stellan, place</td>
<td>(stelb)</td>
<td>stealde</td>
<td>(ge)steal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tellan, count</td>
<td>(telb)</td>
<td>tealde</td>
<td>(ge)teald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cweccan, shake</td>
<td>(cwecb)</td>
<td>cweahte</td>
<td>(ge)cweaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dreccan, vex</td>
<td>(drecb)</td>
<td>dreahte</td>
<td>(ge)dreaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leccan, moisten</td>
<td>(lecb)</td>
<td>leahte</td>
<td>(ge)leaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reccan, narrate</td>
<td>(recb)</td>
<td>reahte</td>
<td>(ge)reaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>streccan, stretch</td>
<td>(strecb)</td>
<td>streahte</td>
<td>(ge)streaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þeccan, cover</td>
<td>(þecb)</td>
<td>þeahte</td>
<td>(ge)þeaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þeccan, wake</td>
<td>(þecb)</td>
<td>weahte</td>
<td>(ge)weaht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bepæcan, deceive</td>
<td>(bepæcp)</td>
<td>bepæhte</td>
<td>bepæht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>læccan, seize</td>
<td>(læcp)</td>
<td>læhte</td>
<td>(ge)læht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ræcan, reach</td>
<td>(ræcp)</td>
<td>ræhte, ræhte</td>
<td>(ge)ræht, -ræht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tæcan, teach</td>
<td>(tæcp)</td>
<td>tæhte, tæhte</td>
<td>(ge)tæht, -tæht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ræcan, reck, care</td>
<td>(ræcp)</td>
<td>röhte</td>
<td>(ge)röht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sëcan, seek</td>
<td>(sëcp)</td>
<td>söhte</td>
<td>(ge)söht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bringan, bring</td>
<td>(bringp)</td>
<td>bröhte</td>
<td>(ge)bröht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þencan, think</td>
<td>(þencp)</td>
<td>þöhte</td>
<td>(ge)þöht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þyncan, seem</td>
<td>(þyncp)</td>
<td>þöhte</td>
<td>(ge)þöht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wyrcan, work</td>
<td>(wyrcp)</td>
<td>worhte</td>
<td>(ge)worht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bycgan, buy</td>
<td>(bycgp)</td>
<td>bohte</td>
<td>(ge)boht</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

235. In Late West Saxon the ea before ht was simplified to e, as, for example, cwehte from cweahte. (See Paragraph 22.) Of the two forms, tæhte and tæhte, ræhte and ræhte, the second without the mutation is the older and more nearly correct; the mutated form is, however, the more common.

Class II

236. This is the largest of the three classes of weak verbs and contains an unusual number of verbs derived from nouns. It is easily distinguished by the endings of the principal parts, the infinitive in -ian, the preterit singular in -ode (-ude, -ade) and the past participle in -od (-ud, -ad), and by the fact that there is no mutation of the radical vowel. The original suffix of the infinitive was -ojan, this o preventing any mutation which might have been caused by the j. When mutation is occasionally found in the root of the verb it is either due to the presence of a mutated vowel in the word from which the verb was derived, as in egsian, to frighten, from egesa, terror, or to the attraction of a first class verb into
the second class, as, for example, timbran, to build, preterit timbrede (I) or timbrode (II). Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baðian, bathe</td>
<td>(baðað)</td>
<td>baðode</td>
<td>baðod</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

237. Like baðian are ácsian, to ask, andswarian, to answer, bodian, to proclaim, clipian, to call, cunnian, to prove, eardian, to dwell, egsian, to frighten, endian, to end, fandian, to test, fetian, to felter, folgian, to follow, gædrian, to gather, hælgian, to hallow, hatian, to hate, hearpian, to harp, hongian, to hang, hordian, to hoard, leornian, to learn, lícian, to like, lócian, to look, losian, to be lost, lufian, to love, manian, to exhort, offrian, to offer, ricsian, to rule, sícian, to journey, sorgian, to sorrow, starian, to stare, páncean, to thank, polian, to suffer, prōwian, to suffer, wacian, to keep watch, weorpian, to honor, wundrian, to wonder, wunian, to dwell, and many others.

CONJUGATION

238. Paradigm: páncean, to thank.

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. pánce</td>
<td>páncode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. páncest</td>
<td>páncoðest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. páncað</td>
<td>páncode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 1–3. páncað</td>
<td>páncoðon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

| Sing. 1–3. pánce | páncode |
| Pl. 1–3. pánce | páncoðen |
116

GRAMMAR

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2. țanca
Pl. 2. țancaþ

INFINITIVE
țancian

GERUND
to țancienne (-anne)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
țanciende

PAST PARTICIPLE
(ge)țancod

239. In the present tense i before e is often written -ig, as in țancige, țancigen. This g is known as a graphic g. The ending -aþ in the 3d present singular indicative is a distinguishing mark of this conjugation. In the preterit the forms -ede, -ude, and -ade for -ode and in the past participle -ed, -ud, and -ad for -od occur, the forms in -a being non-West Saxon.

CLASS III

240. This class of weak verbs, which originally had -ai as a suffix, has almost disappeared in Old English, the verbs formerly belonging to it having been attracted into the first, or, more commonly, into the second class. Only four verbs remain and these show traces of the other two conjugations. These four verbs are habban, to have; libban, to live; secgan, to say; and hycgan, to think. Their conjugation follows:

INDICATIVE

Present

Sing. 1. țabbe libbe, lifge secege hycege
2. țafat, hafast lifast, lifast seægæ, seagæ hygeæ, hogæ
3. hæfþ, hafþ lifaþ, lifaþ
Pl. 1–3. hábbab, hábbab lifbaþ, lifgaþ seçgæ seçgæ
hygeæ, hogæ

hygeæ, hogæ
INFLECTION

Preterit

Sing. 1. hæfde
   2. hæfdest
   3. hæfde
   Pl. 1-3. hæfdon

liſde, liſode  sægde, sæde  hogde
liſdest, liſodest  sægdest, sædest  hogdest
liſde, liſode  sægde, sæde  hogde
liſdon, liſodon  sægdon, sædon  hogdon

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

Sing. 1-3. hæbbe
   Pl. 1-3. hæbben

libbe, lifge  secge  hyge
libben, lifgen  secgen  hyçgen

Preterit

Sing. 1-3. hæfde
   Pl. 1-3. hæfden

liſde, liſode  sægde, sæde  hogde
liſden, liſoden  sægden, sæden  hogden

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2. hafa
   Pl. 2. habbaþ

liſfa  saga, sæge  hoga, hyge
libbaþ, liſgaþ  secgaþ  hyçgaþ

INFINITIVE

habban  liſban, liſgan  secgan  hyçgan

GERUND

tô habbanne (-enne)
   tô liſbanne  tô secganne  tô hyçganne
   tô liſgerne (-enne)  (-enne)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

hæbbende  liſbende, liſgende secgende  hyçgende

PAST PARTICIPLE

(ge)hæfd  (ge)liſd, (ge)liſod  (ge)sægd, -sæd  (ge)hogod

241. When there are two forms given above, the first is the normal West Saxon; the second is Anglian. Both forms, however, may be found in West Saxon documents. The second form in the preterit of secgan, sæde, is formed by dropping the medial g and
lengthening the preceding vowel. *Habban* has a negative form *nabban*, *to lack, have not*. A later form of *hycgan* is *hogian*, preterit, *hogode*, which belongs completely to the second class. *Fylgan*, *to follow*, preterit, *fylgde*, has some traces of the third class, but like *hycgan* it has another form, *folgian*, preterit, *folgode*, which is a regular Class II verb.

**PRETERIT-PRESENT VERBS**

242. The Preterit-Present or Strong-Weak verbs, a small but important group, some of which have become auxiliary verbs in modern English, are so called because their present tense was originally an old strong preterit which had acquired a present meaning. A new weak preterit based on the plural present indicative stem was then formed. The present indicative is conjugated like that of the preterit of regular strong verbs with the exception of the second person singular which, instead of having the vowel of the plural, with the ending -e, keeps the vowel of the singular and has an old preterit ending in -t or -st. The present subjunctive has the regular endings but occasionally has a mutated stem vowel. The preterit is conjugated like all weak preterits. The imperative, infinitive, gerund, and present participle are based on the stem of the present indicative plural. The past participle has the strong ending, -en.

243. Since the present tense of these verbs was originally a strong preterit, remains of the original gradation series may be seen in the vowels of the singular and plural present. On the basis of this imperfect gradation the twelve preterit-present verbs are listed below according to the original class of strong verbs to which they belonged:

Class I ðegan, *to own*; witan, *to know*.

Class II dugan, *to avail*.
INFLECTION

Class III cunnan, to know; unnan, to grant; durran, to dare; bürfan, to need.

Class IV munan, to remember; sculan, sceolan, to have to, shall.

Class V magan, to be able, can; genugan, benugan, to suffice.

Class VI mótan, to be permitted, may.

CONJUGATION

244. Many of these verbs are imperfect; a blank means that the form is missing.

INFinitive

witan, wiótan

ågan
dugan
cunnan

Indicative

Present

Sing. 1. wāt
2. wāst
3. wāt

ah, åg déah, déag can(n), con(n)
åhst duge canst, const
åh, åg déah, déag can(n), con(n)

Pl. 1–3.

witôn
wioton, wütôn

ågon
dugon
cunnon

Preterit

Sing. 1. wist, wisse
2. wistest
3. wist, wisse

áhte
dohte
cūpe
áhtest
dohtest
cūpest
áhte
dohte
cūpe

Pl. 1–3.

wiston, wisson

áhton
dohton
cūpon

Subjunctive

Present

Sing. 1–3. wite
Pl. 1–3. witen

åge
duge, dyge cunne
dugen cunnen
120

GRAMMAR

Preterit

Sing. 1–3. wiste, wisse
   ähte  dohte  cūpe

Pl. 1–3. { wisten  ähten  dohten  cūpen
          wissen

Imperative

Sing. 2. wite
   äge

Pl. 2. witaþ

Gerund

{ tō witanne (-enne)
  tō wiotonne

Present Participle

{ witende
  wiotende  āgende  dugende  cunnende

Past Participle

(ge)witen  āgen
(adj. own)  (ge)cunnen
(adj. known)

Infinitive

unnan  durran  þurfan  munan

Indicative

Present

Sing. 1. an(n), on(n)  dearr  þearf  man, mon
   2.  dearst  þearft  manst, monst
   3. an(n), on(n)  dearr  þearf  man, mon

Pl. 1–3. unnon  durron  þurfon  munon, munab
**INFECTION**

**Preterit**

Sing. 1. úðe  
dorste  þorfte  munde  
2. úðest  þorftest  mundest  
3. úðe  þorfte  munde  
Pl. 1–3. úðon  dorston  þorfton  munden

**Subjunctive**

**Present**

Sing. 1–3. unne  durre, dyrre  þurfe, þyrfe  mune, myne  
Pl. 1–3. unne(n)  durren  þyrfen  muren

**Preterit**

Sing. 1–3.  dorste  þorfte  munde  
Pl. 1–3.  dorsten  þorfton  munden

**Imperative**

Sing. 2. unne  mun(e), myn(e)  
Pl. 2.  munað

**Present Participle**

unnende  þearfende  munende  
þurfende  þyrfende

**Past Participle**

(g)eunnen  (ge)munen
### Grammar

#### Infinitive

| Sculan, sceolan | magan | (ge)nugan | mötan |

#### Indicative

**Present**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. sceal</td>
<td>mæg</td>
<td>möt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. scealt</td>
<td>meaht, miht</td>
<td>möst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sceal</td>
<td>mæg</td>
<td>-neah (impersonal) möt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI. 1–3. sculon, sceolon</td>
<td>magan</td>
<td>-nugon</td>
<td>möton</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Preterit**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. scolde, sceolde</td>
<td>meahte, mihte</td>
<td>möste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. scoldest, sceoldest</td>
<td>meahtest, mihtest</td>
<td>mösteste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. scolde, sceolde</td>
<td>meahte, mihte -nohte</td>
<td>möste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI. 1–3. scolden, sceolden</td>
<td>meahten, mihten</td>
<td>möston</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

**Present**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1–3. scule, scyle sceole</td>
<td>mæge, mugæ -nuge</td>
<td>möte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI. 1–3. sculen, scylen sceolen</td>
<td>mægen, mugen</td>
<td>möten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Preterit**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1–3. scolde, sceolde</td>
<td>meahte, mihte</td>
<td>möste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI. 1–3. scolden, sceolden</td>
<td>meahten, mihten</td>
<td>mösten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Participle**

mægende

**Past Participle**

meaht (adj. mighty)
INFLECTION

ANOMALOUS VERBS

245. Four common verbs remain which cannot be classified with any of the preceding groups. These are bēon, wesan, to be; willan, to will; dōn, to do; gān, to go.

(1)

The first of these is based on three different roots, two of which appear in the present and one in the preterit.

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. eom; bēo</td>
<td>wāes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eart; bist</td>
<td>wāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. is; bīp</td>
<td>wās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 1–3. sind, sindon, sint; bēoph</td>
<td>wāron</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1–3. sie, sy; bēo</td>
<td>wāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. 1–3. sien, sŷn; bēon</td>
<td>wāren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2. bēo; wēs, wēs
Pl. - 2. bēoph; wēsaþ

INFINITIVE

bēon; wesan

GERUND

tō bēonne

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

déonde; wesende

PAST PARTICIPLE

Negative forms are neom (ne + eom), nis (ne + is), nās (ne + wās), nāron (ne + wāron), nāre, nāren (ne + wāre, ne + wāren).
### Indicative

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Verb form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>wille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 2.</td>
<td>wilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 3.</td>
<td>wille</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Preterit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Verb form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>wolde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 2.</td>
<td>woldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 3.</td>
<td>wolde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Verb form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1-3.</td>
<td>wille</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Preterit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Verb form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1-3.</td>
<td>wolde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

#### Sing. 2.

- only with negative, nyllað, nellað

### Infinitive

- willan

### Present Participle

- willende

### Past Participle

### Negative forms are common: nyllan or nellan, nolde, etc.

### Indicative

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Verb form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>dō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 2.</td>
<td>dēst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 3.</td>
<td>dēþ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Preterit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Verb form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>dyde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 2.</td>
<td>dydest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 3.</td>
<td>dyde</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Pl. 1–3. | dōþ |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb form</th>
<th>dydon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing. 1-3. dō</strong></td>
<td>dō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl. 1-3. dön</strong></td>
<td>dön</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Sing. 2. dō</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pl. 2. dōb</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Infinitive**

dōn

tō dönne

**Present Participle**

dōnde

**(ge)dōn**

(4)

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Preterit</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing. 1. gā</strong></td>
<td>gā</td>
<td>ēode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. gāst</td>
<td></td>
<td>ēodest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. gāb</td>
<td></td>
<td>ēode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl. 1-3. gāb</strong></td>
<td>gāb</td>
<td>ēodon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Preterit</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing. 1-3. gā</strong></td>
<td>gā</td>
<td>ēode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl. 1-3. gān</strong></td>
<td>gān</td>
<td>ēoden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Sing. 2. gā</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pl. 2. gāb</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>GERUND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gän</td>
<td>tō gänne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gändə</td>
<td>(ge)gän</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SYNTAX

246. The student of Latin and of Old English will observe many similarities in the syntax of the two languages, at the same time that he recognizes the close relation between that of Old English and modern English. Without attempting to enter into a full discussion of the subject, the following paragraphs may prove suggestively helpful.

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

247. The nominative is regularly the case of the subject and predicate. Examples: (1) Subject: Sum man hæfde twēgen suna, *A certain man had two sons*; (2) Predicate: Hē wæs swīpe spēdig man, *He was a very wealthy man*.

The vocative, the case of direct address, is like the nominative. When there is an adjective modifier, the adjective is weak. Examples: Mine brōjor, mine þā lēofan, ic eom swīðe blīpemōd tō ēow, *My brothers, my dear ones, I am very well-disposed toward you*.

The genitive may be subjective or objective. Examples: (1) Subjective: Hlēop on þæs cyninges stēdan, *He leaped on the king's steed*; (2) Objective: in þæs Scyppendes lōf, *in praise of the Creator*; Hwylc þearf is ðē hūsles? *What need of the eucharist have you?*

The genitive plural is sometimes used where the singular might be expected. Example: heofona rīce, *the kingdom of heaven*.

The partitive genitive is very common after numerals used as nouns and after words expressing quantity. Examples: hund missēra, *a hundred half-years*; landes tō fēla, *too much land*; ic līt hafō hēafod-māga, *I have few near relatives*.

The genitive may be used with certain verbs among which are
the following: bidan, to await, biddan, to ask, brūcan, to use, enjoy, cunnian, to test, fandian, to try, gýman, to care, behōfian, to have need of, lettan, to hinder, myndgian, to remind, nēos(i)an, to visit, attack, genyttian, to use, oftēon, to deprive, tīdian, to grant, trūwian, to trust, getwēfan, to hinder, getwēman, to separate, wealdan, to control, rule, wēnan, to expect, think, weorpan, to throw, wyrca, to acquire, gain. Examples: Gif þū Grendles dearst... bidan, If you dare await Grendel; nū hē þin cunnode, now he has tested you; þæt hē þær brūcan môt... lifes and lissa, that he may there enjoy life and pleasures.

The genitive is also used adverbially. Examples: dæges, by day, singāles, continually, gēara, long since. For other examples see Adverbs, Paragraph 189.

The dative is used most commonly as the indirect object. Example: his larēowe and biscope Paulini biscopseol forgeaf, he gave an episcopal residence to his teacher and bishop, Paulinus.

The dative of possession, sometimes called the dative of reference or the ethical dative, is also frequently found. Examples: him on bearme læg, it lay in his lap; sette his þa swīþran hond him on þæt hēafod, he placed his right hand on his head; him wæs gēomor sefa, they had a sad spirit.

A few adjectives are followed by the dative. Examples: þēah hē him læof wēre, although he was dear to them; gif þū forð his willan hēarsum bēon wilt, if you will henceforth be obedient to his will; Heofona rice is gelic gehyddum goldhorde on þām æcere, The kingdom of heaven is like a treasure hidden in the field.

The dative is used after many prepositions, among them æfter, after, ðet, at, be, bi, big, by, būtan, except, for, for, fore, before, from, from, in, in, mid, with, of, from, ofer, over, on, on, tō, to, under, under, wið, against. Of these for, in, mid, ofer, on, under, wið also govern the accusative, especially, although not necessarily, when
the idea of motion is involved. The preposition sometimes follows its object with the force of an adverb. Examples: Him big stōdan bunan and orcas, Beside him stood cups and pitchers; ne wæs him Fitela mid, nor was Fitela with him; þā hē him of dyde isernbyrnan, then he took off his iron coat of mail.

Certain verbs usually govern the dative, among them the following: beorgan, to protect, fôn, to seize, hýran, to obey, lician, to please, gelyfan, to believe in, benēotan, to deprive of, berēafian, to bereave, forscrífan, to condemn, oftēon, to deprive, trēowan, to trust, þēowian, to serve, wealdan, ð rule. Examples: Ne mæg nān man twām hlāfordum þēowian, No man can serve two masters; þām wife þā word wel licodon, the words pleased the woman well.

The dative is also used with impersonal verbs. Examples: mé þæt riht ne þinceð, that does not seem to me right; hū him æt æte spēow, how he succeeded (fared) at the meal.

The dative is used sometimes as an adverb. Examples: hwilum, sometimes, miclum, very, wundrum, wonderfully. For other examples see Adverbs, Paragraph 189.

With two exceptions (the masculine and neuter singular of adjectives, demonstratives, and interrogative pronouns) the forms of the dative coincide with those of the instrumental case. It is therefore often difficult to distinguish between them. This dative-instrumental is used to denote means or instrument; it corresponds to the Latin ablative. In a few instances the instrumental alone is used: in expressions of time, þý ylcan mōnē ond dæge, in the same month and day; with comparatives, se eorl wæs þē blīfra, the earl was the happier; with nouns in the sense of the Latin ablative absolute, ðū sprungenre sunnan, the sun being sprung up.

The accusative is the case of the direct object. Some verbs have two objects, the person and the thing, both in the accusative.
the latter often in such instances being a cognate accusative
Example: Ic þæs Hrōðgar mæg... ræd gelēran, I can give (teach) advice to Hrothgar.

The accusative is also used as the subject of the infinitive. Example: Hi lēton þā of folman fēolhearde speru, gegrundene gāras fēogan, They let the file-hard spears, the ground spears fly from the hand.

The accusative is used adverbially, often to denote extent of time. Examples: ealneg, always; ealne dæg, all day. For other similar uses see Adverbs, Paragraph 189.

In addition to the prepositions mentioned above which may be followed by either the dative or the accusative, there are some which always take the accusative, among them geond, throughout, of, until, þurh, through, ymb, around.

VERBS

248. The subjunctive is used, as in Latin, (1) in a clause of purpose or result, (2) in a conditional clause, (3) in indirect discourse, (4) in a command. Examples: (1) Ara ðīnum fæder and ðīne mēder...þæt þū sīe þy leng libbende on eorðan, Honor thy father and thy mother that thou mayst be the longer living on earth; (2) Hæfde þā forsiðod sunu Ecgþēowes under gynne grund... nemne him heaðobyrne helpe gefremede, Then the son of Ecgþēow would have journeyed under the spacious ground, unless the battle-byrnie had helped him; (3) Wulfstan sāde þæt hē gefōre of Hæþum, Wulfstan said that he departed from Haddeby. That the subjunctive is often replaced by the indicative, however, may be seen from the conclusion of this same sentence, þæt þæt scip wæs ealne wæg yrnende under segl, [said] that the ship was all the way running under sail: (4) Bēon gegaderode þā wæteru þē sind under þēre heofenan, Let the waters be gathered that are under the heavens.
A command may be expressed not only by the imperative and the subjunctive, but also by the word wuton or uton with the infinitive. Example: Wutun āgifan cām esne his wif, Let us give the man his wife.

The infinitive is often used with verbs of motion where in modern English we should expect the present participle. Example: Gewāt him ā se æċeling... wadan ofer wealdas, Then the prince departed, traveling over the weald.

For other peculiarities of verbal syntax the student is referred to Notes on Strong Verbs.

WORD ORDER

249. Word order in Old English is on the whole that of modern English. The inversion of the subject and verb, however, as in modern German is fairly common, occurring usually when the sentence begins with an adverb. Examples: Da hēt se cyning swā dōn, Then the king ordered it so to be done; Ārās hē from þēm slēpe, then he arose from sleep. The placing of the object before the verb in a subordinate clause, as in modern German, is also common. Example: ā se cyning ā þās word gehyrde, þā andswarode hē him, when the king heard these words, then he answered him.
I

THE WEST SAXON GOSPELS

The West Saxon translation of the Gospels, the oldest version in the English tongue, antedating Wyclif's Bible by nearly four hundred years, was made in the latter part of the Old English period, presumably about the year 1000. It is the work of an unknown author or authors writing about a hundred years after King Alfred's death in a literary period in which prose was the chief vehicle of expression and Ælfric the dominant figure. The translation was made, not from the Greek original, but from the Latin translation known as the Vulgate, generally used by the ninth century throughout Western Europe. The Vulgate was the work of Jerome who, in the fourth century, revised the old Latin version of the New Testament and the Psalter and translated the rest of the Old Testament.

There are four important manuscripts of the West Saxon Gospels. The one closest in time and in text to the original is MS. 140 (Corp.), in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, one of that famous collection of manuscripts left by Matthew Parker, Archbishop of Canterbury during Queen Elizabeth's reign. This manuscript dates either from the last decade of the tenth century or the first decade of the eleventh century, probably the latter, and, from a note in Latin made by the scribe at the end of the Gospel of St. Matthew, was evidently written in or near Bath. The second manuscript (B), Bodley 441, is in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and probably also once belonged to Archbishop Parker. It is closely related to the Corpus manuscript, the dates of the two being approximately the same. The third manuscript (C), Cotton Otho C I, in the Cotton collection of the British Museum, also belongs to this same period; it bears, however, a closer relation to B
than to Corp. Part of it, including all of Matthew and a portion of Mark, was destroyed in the disastrous Cotton Library fire of 1731. The fourth manuscript (A), I, i, 2, 11, of the Cambridge University Library, is nearly half a century later than the other three, ca. 1050, and was written at Exeter. Its spelling is consistently late West Saxon.

Three other manuscripts may be mentioned: the Lakelands Fragment of the Gospel of St. John in the Bodleian Library; the Royal I A XIV in the British Museum; and Hatton 38 in the Bodleian. The Lakelands Fragment dates from the first half of the eleventh century and is related to A. The Royal is a twelfth-century version of MS. B and the Hatton a still later twelfth-century revision of the Royal. Both the latter may be classed in the period of early Middle English.


The following selections, the parables of the Prodigal Son and of the Pharisee and Publican, from the Gospel according to St. Luke, are taken from the Corpus MS., collated with MSS. B, C, and A. Bright’s edition also has been consulted in the preparation of the text.

I. THE PRODIGAL SON

St. Luke, XV, 11–32

11. He cwæð, Sōðlice sum man hæfde twēgen suna.
12. Pā cwæð sē gingra ¹ tō his fæder, “Fæder, syle mē minne dēl minre æhte þe mē tō gebyreþ.” Pā dælde hē him his æhte.

¹ All MSS. have yldra for gingra; C has gingra above line in later hand.
13. Da æfter feawum¹ dagum ealle his þing gegaderude sæginga sunu, and fèrde wæclice on feorlen rice, and forspilde þar his æhta, lybbende on his gælsan.

14. Da hè hig hæfde ealle åmyrrede, þa wearð mycel hunger on þam rice, and hè wearð wædla.

15. Þa fèrde hè and folgude ánum burhsittandan men þæs rices; ða sende hè hine to his tûne þæt hè hëolde his swýn.

16. Da gewilnode hè his wambe gefyllan of þam bêancoddum² þe ðà swýn ēton; and him man ne sealde.

17. Þa beþóhte hè hine, and cwæð, “Éalā, hû fela hýrlinga³ on mines fæder hûse hláf genôhne habbað; and ic hér on hungre forwurðe!”

18. Íc áriðe, and íc fare to mínun fæder, and íc secge him, “Éalā, fæder, ic syngode on heofenas and beforan þe;

19. Nû ic neom wyrðe þæt ic bêo þin sunu nemned; dô më swâ änne of þínum hýrlingum.”⁴

20. And hè árás þà and cóm to his fæder. And þà gýt þa hè was feorr his fæder, hè hyne geseah, and wearð mid mildheartnesse ðástyrð, and agën hine arn and hine beclypte and cysters hine.

21. Da cwæð his sunu, “Fæder, ic syngode on heofon and beforan þe; nû ic ne eom wyrþe þæt ic þin sunu bêo genemned.”

22. Ða cwæð sê fæder tò his þéowum, “Bringað raðe þone⁵ sêlestan geþyrelan and scyrðað hyne, and syllað him bring on his hand and gescy þò his fôtum;

23. And bringað án fàtt styric and ofslêað, and utun etan and gewistfullian;

24. For þam þês mín sunu wæs dëad, and hè gædeccude; hè forwearð, and hè is gemêt.” Da ongunnon hig gewistlæcan.

¹ All MSS. feawā.
² Corp., B, biencoddun; C, biencoddan; A, bæancoddum.
³ Corp., B, C, yrðlinga; A, hýrlinga.
25. Sōðlice hys yldra sunu wæs on æcere; and hē cōm, and þā hē þæm hūse genēlæhte, hē gehyrde þone 1 swēg and þæt weryd.
26. Þā clypode hē Ænnē þepow and æxode hine hwæt þæt wēre. 
27. Ðā cwæð hē, "Þīn brōðor cōm; and þīn fæder ofslōh ān fēt celīf, for þæm þe hē hyne hālne onfēng."
28. Ðā bealh hē hine and nolde in gān. Þā ðode his fæder út and ongan hine biddan.
29. Ðā cwæþ hē his fæder andswærigende, "Efne swā swa gēara ic þē þēowude, and ic nēfre þīn bebod ne forgýmde; and ne sældest þū mē nēfre ān ticcen þæt ic mid mīnum frēondum gewistfullude;
30. Ac sygān þēs þīn sunu cōm þē hys spēde mid myltystrum āmyrde, þū ofslēge him fētt celīf."
31. Ðā cwæþ hē, "Sunu, þū eart symle mid mē, and ealle mīne þing synt þīne;
32. Pe gebyrede gewistfullian and geblissian, for þām þēs þīn brōðor wæs dēd, and hē geedoucēd; hē forwearð, and hē is gemēt."

II. THE PHARISEE AND THE PUBLICAN

St. Luke, XVIII, 10–17

10. Twēgen men fērdun tō sumum temple þæt hīg hīg gebēdun; ān sundorhālga, and ðōer mānfull.
11. Ðā stōd sē Fariseus and hine þus gebēd, "God, þē ic þuēças dō for þām þē ic neom swylce ðōre men, rēafers, unrihtwise, unrihthēmeras, ðōē ēac swylce þēs mānfulla.
12. Ðic fæste tūwa on wucan; ² ic sylle tēoþunga ealles þēs þē ic bēbбе."
13. Ðā stōd sē mānfulla feorran, and nolde furđun his ðagan ōhebban úp tō þām heofone, ac hē bēot his brēost and cwæþ, "God, bēo þū milde mē synfullum."

14. Sōplice ic āow secge þæt þēs fērde gerihtwisud tō his hūse, for þām þē āsc þē hine upp āhefød þē genyðerud, and sē þē hine nyðerāð byð upp ðahafen.

15. Dā brōhton hig cild tō him þæt hē hig æthrine. Pā his leornungnihtas hig gesāwon, hig cidđon him.


17. Sōplice ic āow secge, Swā hwylc swā ne onfēhō Godes rice swā swā cild, ne gāð hē on Godes rice.”
II

THE OLD ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF THE HEPTATEUCH

As is true of the West Saxon Gospels, the Old English version of the Heptateuch was a translation, not from the original Hebrew, but from the Vulgate. The greater part of the Heptateuch and also the books of Judges, Esther, Job, and Judith were translated by Ælfric¹ in the last years of the tenth century. Genesis (Chapter 25 to the end), Exodus, and Leviticus, however, were not the work of Ælfric but of some unknown translator. Of the following selections, therefore, the first is by Ælfric and the second by an unknown hand.

The Heptateuch exists in two manuscripts, Laud Misc. 509, formerly Laud E 19, and Laud E 33, both in the Bodleian Library. It has been edited by Edward Thwaites in his Heptateuchus, Liber Job et Evangelium Nicodemi; Anglo-Saxonice, Oxford, 1698, and by Grein in the first volume of his Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosae, Cassel, 1872. The following text is taken from Laud Misc. 509, the editions of Thwaites and Grein also having been consulted.

I. THE CREATION

Genesis, I

1. On anginne gescēop God heofenan and eorðan.
2. Sēo eorðē sōplīce wæs ēدل and ēṃttig and ðēostru wæron ofer þāre niwelnisse brādnisse and Godes gāst wæs geferod ofer wāteru.

¹ For a brief account of Ælfric see infra, p. 202.
4. God geseah þat hit góð wæs and hē tōdēlde þæt lēohþ fram þæm þēostrum:
5. And hēt þæt lēohþ dæg and þā þēostra niht. Dā wæs ge-
worden āfen and morgen ān dæg.
6. God cwæð þā ēft, Gewurðe nū fæstnis tōmiddes þām wæterum
and tōtƿēme þā wæteru from þām wæterum.
7. And God geworhte þā fæstnisses and tōtƿēmde þā wæteru þe
wēron under þēre fæstnisse frum þām þē wēron bufan þēre
fæstnisse: hit wæs þā swā gedōn.
8. And God hēt þā fæstnisse heofenan. And wæs þā geworden
āfen and morgen āber dæg.
9. God þā sóþlice cwæð, Bēon gēgaderode þā wæteru þe sind
under þēre heofenan and ætōwige drignis: hit wæs þā swā gedōn.
10. And God gcēgde þā drignisse eorðan, and þēra wēteras
gegaderunga hēt sēs: God geseah þat hit góð wæs.
11. And cwæþ, Sprıtte sēo eorðē grōwende gārs and sǣd wir-
cende, and æppelbēre tēow wēstum wircende sēfter his cinne, þēs
sǣd sig on him sīlnum ofer eorðan: hit wæs ðā swā gedōn.
12. And sēo eorðe forb ðētāh grōwende wirte and sǣd berende
be hire cinne, and tēow westum wircende and gehwilc sǣd hēbb-
bende sēfter his hīwe: God geseah þat hit góð wæs.
13. And wēs geworden āfen and mergen sē þridda dæg.
14. God cwæþ þā sóþlice, Bēo nū lēohþ on þēre heofenan fæst-
nysse and tōdēlon dæg and nihte; and bēon tō täcnum and tō
tiddum and tō dagum and tō gēarum:
15. And hīg scīnon on þēre heofenan fæstnysse and ālihton þā
eorðan: hit wēs þā swā geworden.
16. And God geworhte twā mīcela lēohþ; þēt māre lēohþ tō þēs
daeges lihtinge, and þēt lēsse lēohþ tō þēre nihtē lihtinge, and
steoran hē geworhte.
17. And gesette hīg on þēre heofenan, þat hīg scīnon ofer eorðan,
18. And gímdon þæs dæges and þære nihte, and töðaldon léoh and þæostra: God geseah þæt hit göd was.

19. And wæs geworden æfen and mergen sē feorþa dæg.

20. God cwaēð eac swilce, Tēon nú þā wæteru forð swimminge cynn cucu on life, and fleogende cinn ofer eorðan under þære heofenan fæstnisse.

21. And God gescēop þā þā micelan hwalas, and eall libbende fisc-cinn and stirigendlice, þe þā wæteru tuxon forð on heora hīwum, and eall fleogende cinn after heora cinne: God geseah þæt hit göd wæs.

22. And blētsode hig þus cweþende, Weaxaþ and bēoþ gemenig-filde, and gefīllāþ þære sē wæteru, and þā fugelas bēon gemenig-filde ofer eorðan.

23. And þā wæs geworden æfen and mergen sē fifta dæg.

24. God cwaēð eac swilce, Lǣde sēo eorþe forð cucu nītēna on heora cinne, and creopende cinn and dēor after heora hīwum: hit wæs þā swā geworden.

25. And God geworhte þære eorþan dēor after hira hīwum, and þā nītēna and eall creopende cynn on heora cinne: God geseah þæt hit göd wæs.

26. And cwaēð, Uton wircean man tō andlicnisse, and tō ūre gelicnisse: and hē sig ofer þā fixas, and ofer þā fugelas, and ofer þā dēor, and ofer ealle gescealfa, and ofer ealle þā creopende þe stirāþ on eorþan.

27. God gescēop þā man tō his andlicnisse, tō Godes andlicnisse hē gescēop hine; werhādes and wifhādes hē gescēop hig.

28. And God hig blētsode and cwaēð, Wexaþ and bēoþ gemenig-filde, and gefīllāþ þā eorþan, and gewīldāþ hig, and habbaþ on ṣowrum gewealde þære sē fixas and þære lyfte fugelas and ealle nītēna þe stirāþ ofer eorþan.

29. God cwaēþ þā, Eofne, ic forgeaf ðow eall gārs and wyrtā sæd
berende ofer eorðan, and ealle trêowa þa þe habbaþ sæd on him silfon heors ægenes cynnes, þæt hig bœn æow to mete;

30. And eallum nýtenum and eallum fugel-cynne and eallum þâm þe stiriaþ on eorðan, on þâm þe ys liþbende lif, þæt hig habbon him to gereordienne. Hit was þa swâ gedôn:

31. And God geseah ealle þa þing þe hê geworhte, and hig wæron swîþe gode. Wæs þa geworden æfen and mergen sê sixta dæg.

II. MOSES AND THE BURNING BUSH

Exodus, III, 1–14

1. Sôþlice Moises hêold his mæges sceap þæs sâcerdes on Mad- ian, þæs naman wæs Iethro, and þa hê drâf his heorde to inne-
weardum þâm wêstene, hê Page to Godes dûne, þe man Oreb nemþ.

2. And Drihten him sêtowde on ðires lige on-middan ânre brê-
melþyrnan, and hê gesehen þæt sêo þyrne barn and nes forburnen.

3. Þa cwaþ Moises, Ic gâ and gesêo þæs mielan gesiþhe, hwi ðæos þyrne ne sî forbærned:

4. Sôþlice þa Drihten gesehen þæt hê fêrde to gesêonne, hê clypode hine of midre þære brêmelþyrnan and cwaþ, Moises, Moises, and hê andswarode and cwaþ, Hêr ic eom.

5. And hê cwaþ, Ne genealâce þu hider; dô þin gesêy of þinum fôtum; sôþlice sêo stôw þe þu onstynst ys hálig eorðe.

6. And hê cwaþ, Ic eom þines fæder Abrahâmes God, Isaâces God, and Iâcôbes God. Moises bêydde his nebb; hê ne dorste besêon ongên God.

7. Ðâ cwaþ God to him, Ic gesehen mines folces geswencedynysse on Egipta lande, and ic gehirde hira clypunge for þære heardinysse þe þa weore bewiton;

8. And ic wiste hira sâr, and ic âståh nyber þæt ic hig âlýsde of Egipta handum, and þæt ic hig ût âlædde of þâm lande to gôdum
lander and widgillum, on þæt land þe¹ sēwð meolece and hunie, 
tò þám stōwe þær Chananeus ys and Ethēus, Amorēus and Phere-
zēus, Enēus and Gebusēus.

9. Witodlice Israēla bearna clypung cōm tō mē, and ic geseah 
hira geswencedynsse þe hīg fram Egipton þolodon.

10. Ac cum, ic sende þe tō Pharaōne, þæt þū ðūt alāde mīn folc 
Israēla bearn of Egipta lande.

11 And þā cwæþ Moises tō Gode, Hwæt eom ic þæt ic gā tō 
Pharaōne, and ðūt alāde² Israēla bearn of Egipta lande.

12. þā cwæþ hē tō him, Ðic bēo mid þē; þæt þū hæfstan tō tācne 
þæt ic þē sende: þonne þū ðūt alætst mīn folc of Egipta lande, þū 
offrast Gode uppan þisse dūne.

13. þā cwæþ Moises tō him, Nū ic gā tō Israēla bearnum and 
seceg him, Êower fædera Gode mē sende tō ðōw. Gif hīg cwæþaþ 
tō mē, Hwæt ys hys nama, hwæt seceg ic him?

14. þā cwæþ God tō Moise, Ðic eom sē þe eom, cwæþ hē. Sege 
þus Israēla bearnum, Ñe þe ys mē sende tō ðōw.

¹ MS. þe þe.   ² MS. alædyme. 
THE COLLOQUY OF ÆLFRIC

This Colloquy was written in Latin by Ælfric ¹ for the use of boys learning that language. As readily may be seen, it is a conversation between a master and his pupils, the latter taking the parts of various laborers and explaining their occupations. In the selection here offered from the beginning of the Colloquy, are mentioned the monk, the farmer, the shepherd, the oxherd, the hunter, and the fisherman. The Old English text is an interlinear gloss of the Latin. It was made for the aid not of the student but of the teacher, whose knowledge of Latin was often very limited. (See Wright, Volume of Vocabularies, p. ix.)

The present text is from MS. Cotton Tiberius A III (C). Three other extant manuscripts contain the Latin, but only one other gives the Old English gloss and then only occasionally. This is 154, St. John's College, Oxford (J). C is used here as basis, with references to J. Thorpe printed the contents of the Cotton script in Analectica Anglo-Saxonica; also Thomas Wright, in A Volume of Vocabularies illustrating the condition and manners of our forefathers, as well as the history of the former elementary education and of the languages spoken in this island from the tenth century to the fifteenth...1857. The late W. H. Stevenson, in Anecdota Oxoniensia, 1929, collated thoroughly the Latin of the four scripts and the Old English of the two mentioned, C and J. Wright and Stevenson both have been consulted in the preparation of the following text.

Wē cildra biddaþ þē, ēalā lārōw, þæt þu tæce ús sprecan, forþam uŋgelǣrēde wē syndon and gewǣmmodlice wē sprecæþ.

¹ For a brief account of Ælfric see infra, p. 202.
Hwæt wille gē sprecan?
Hwæt rēce wē hwæt wē sprecan būton hit riht sprec sy and be-
hefe,1 nās ðel oþ þe fraced!
Wille gē bēon 2 beswungen on leornunge?
Lœofre ys ðs bēon beswungen 3 for lære þanne hit ne cunnan.
Ac wē witan þē bilewitne wesan and nellan onbelāden sinneglā
ðs, būton þū bi tōgenyddfram ðs.
Ic āxie þē hwæt sprycst þū? Hwæt hæfست þū weorkes?
Ic eom geanwyrd monuc, and ic singe ælce dæg seofon tīdā
mid gebrōprum, and ic eom byagod on rāedinga 4 and on sange, ac
þēah hwæþere ic wolde betwēnan leornian sprecan on lēden gereorde.
Hwæt cunnon þēs þine gefēran?
Sume synt yrblingcgas, sume sceþyrdas, sume oxanhyrdas,
sume ðac swylcce huntan, sume fisceras, sume fugeleras, sume
æypmenn, sume scðw-wyrhtan, sealeras, ðeceras.
Hwæt sægest þū, yrblingc? Hū begæst þū weorc þīn?
Ēalā, leof hlaford! þearle ic deorfe. Ic gā ðt on dægrēd,
þywende oxon tō felda, and jugie hīg tō syl; nys hit swā 5
stearc winter þast ic durre lūtian æt hām for ege hlafordes mínes,
ac geiukodon oxan and gefæstnodon sceare and culþre mit þære
syl ælce dæg ic sceal erian fulne æcer 6 oþ þe māre.
Hæfست þū ænigne gefēran?
Ic hæbbe sumne snapan þywende oxen mid gāðísene, þē ðac
swilce nū hās ys for cyldē and hrēame.
Hwæt māre dēst þū on dæg?

1 MS. behese; corrected by Stevenson.
2 ge beon supplied by Wright.
3 MS. beswogen; corrected by Wright; so Stevenson.
4 on rēdinga supplied by Wright from the Latin; Stevenson omits.
5 MS. see; Wright, Stevenson, sceo.
6 MS. æcer, "no doubt an error for æcer," says Wright. Stevenson also notes
and corrects.
THE COLLOQUY OF ÆLFRIC

“Wyslice þæne mære ic dō. Ic sceal fyllan binnan oxan mid hig and wæterian ¹ hig and scearn ² heora beran út.

Hig! hig! micel gedeorf ys hyt.

Gē leof; micel gedeorf hit ys, forþam ic neom frēoh.

Scēaphyrde, hæfæt þū ænig gedeorf?

Gēa, leof, ic hæbbe. On forewerdne morgen ic drife scēap mine tō heora læse, and stande ofer hig on hæte and on cyle mid hundum, þē læs wulfas forswelgen hig, and ic agēnlēde hig tō ³ heora loca, and melke hig twēowa on deag, and heora loca ic hæbbe on þærtō and cēse and buteran ic dō, and ic eom getrywe hlāforde mīnon.

Ēalā, oxanhyrde! Hwæt wyrcst ⁴ þū?

Ēalā, hlāford mīn, micel ic gedeorfe. þæne sē yrplinge un-scēnþ þā oxan, ic læde hig tō læse, and ealle niht ic stande ⁴⁰ ofer hig waciende for þeofan, and eft on ērne mergen ic betæce hig hām yrplingege wel gefylde and gewæterode.

Ys þæs of þīnum gefērum?

Gēa, hē ys.

Canst þū ænig þīng?

Ænne crafte ic cnn.

Hwylcne ys?

Hunta ic eom.

Hwēs?

Cincges.

Hū begēst þū crafte þinne?

Ic brēde mē max and sette hig on stōwe gehæppe, and getihte hundas mine þæt wildeor hig ēhton ōþ þæt hig þē cuman tō þām nettan unforscēawoldlice and þæt hig swā bēon begrynodo, and ic ofalēa hig on þām maxum.

¹ MS. wæte-terian; also noted by Stevenson.
² MS. scearn; corrected by Stevenson.
³ MS. and (7), which Stevenson keeps with “(sic)” after ic.
⁴ MS. wyrcst; em. by Stevenson.
Ne canst þū huntian būton mid nettum?
Gēa, būton nettum huntian ic mæg.
Hū?
Mid swiftum hundum ic betæce 1 wildeor.
Hwylce wildeor swyþost gefēst * þū?
Ic gefēo heortas and bāras and rānn and rāgan and hwilun haran.
Wære þū tōdæg on huntnolde?
Ic næs, forþām sunnan-dæg ys; ac gyrstan-dæg ic wæs on huntnge.
Hwæt gelæhtest þū?
Twēgen heortas and ānne bār.
Hū gefēnce þū hig?
Heortas ic gefēnge on nettum and bār ic ofslōh.
Hū wære þū dyrstig ofstikian bār?
Hundas bedrifon hyne tô mē, and ic þār tōgēanes standende 70 fārlice ofstikode hyne.
Swyþe þryste þū wære þā.
Ne sceal hunta forhtfull wesan forþām mislice wildeor wunian on wudum.
Hwæt dēst þū be þinre huntunge?
Ic sylle cyncge * swā hwæt swā ic gefō, forþām ic eom hunta hys.
Hwæt sylþ hē þē?
Hē scrýt mē wel and fētt and hwilun sylþ mē hors oþþe bēah, þæt þē lustlicor crafte minne ic beganecge.
Hwylcne crafte canst þū?
Ic eom fiscere.
Hwæt begytst * þū of þinum crafte?
Bigleofan and scrūd and feoh.

1 MS. betæce; so Stevenson, with implicit comment in “(sic).”
* MS. gefēht; em. by Stevenson.
* MS. cync; corrected by Stevenson
* MS. begyst; corrected by Stevenson.
Hū gefēhst þū fixas?
Ic āstigie min scyp, and wyrpe max mine on ēa and aegil opþe þe ic wyrpe, and spyrtan ¹ and swā hwæt swā hig gehaeftað ic genime.

Hwæt gif hit unclæne bōþ fixas?
Ic ūt-wyrpe þā unclænan ² ūt and genime mē clæne tō mete.

Hwār cępst þū fixas þīne?
On ceastre.
Hwā bigþ hit?

Ceasterwara. Íc ne mæg swā fela geniman ³ swā fela swā ic mæg gesyllan.

Hwilc fixas gefēhst þū?

Ælas and hacodas, mynas and ðelepūtan, seðotan and lampredan, and swā wylce swā on wætere swymmann. Sprotæ.

Forhwī ne fixast þū on sæ?
Hwilon ic dō ac selōn, forgām micel rēwyrt mē ys tō sæ.
Hwæt fēhst þū on sæ?

Hāringas and leaxas, mere-swīn and stirian, ðōstran and crabban, muslan, winewincclan, sæ-coccas, fage and ðlōc, and lopystran and fela swylce.

Wilt þū fōn sumne hwæl?
Nic.

Forhwī?

Forhwār plyhtlīc ⁴ þinge ⁵ hit ys gefōn hwæl. Gebeornltīre ys ⁶ mē faran tō ēa mid scypē mēnan faran mid mænegam scypum on huntunge hranes.

¹ MS. swyrtan; so Stevenson, followed by sic.
² MS. utclænan; corrected by Wright.
³ Supplied. Wright suggests geofon.
⁴ MS. plyhtlic or possibly wbyhtlic; em. by Stevenson.
⁵ MS. g erased; Stevenson, þīnē.
⁶ Not in MS.; supplied from Latin.
Forhwå swå?

Forbåm lêofre ys më gefôn fisc þæne ic mæg ofslæn þe nă þæt ðæn ¹ më ac êac swylce mine gefêran mid ðæm sige he mæg be sencean ðep geowylman.

And þéah mânige gefôb hwælas and ætberstæþ frëcnysse and micelne sceat þanon begytaþ.

Sôþ þu segst, ac ic ne geþristge for módes mines nytenyssæ.

¹ MS: þe nat an; t of nat is larger and may stand for þæt.
THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE

The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle is one of the most important historical records of the English race. To most readers it is closely associated with the name of Alfred, for not only does the Chronicle probably owe its inception to that great king but some of its most graphic pages deal with his victories over the Danes.

The Chronicle goes back to the coming of Julius Cæsar to Britain and extends, in one of the manuscripts, to the year 1154. The records of the early years it is thought were filled in by chroniclers of Alfred’s time from tradition, from brief records kept by the monasteries, and from Bede’s *Historia Ecclesiastica* or the chronological epitome of it which Bede gave as an appendix to his *History*. These early accounts are usually less complete and of less historical importance than the later contemporary entries. The question of the formation of the Chronicle as a whole is extremely complicated, and for a discussion of it the student is referred to Earle and Plummer, *Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel*.¹ Suffice it to say here that in 891 Alfred probably had the early material put into shape with an account of his own wars added thereto. This Chronicle was continued officially year by year until 924, after which it is composed of fragments from various sources, one large section from 983 to 1018 being probably the work of one writer. Because of this variety of authorship the Chronicle is uneven in character, ranging from entries which contain only bare statements of fact to those of some literary pretension.

The original version of the Chronicle, that which was probably inspired by King Alfred, is not extant. We have, however, seven

manuscripts containing the Chronicle and two very brief fragments. These seven manuscripts represent four distinct Chronicles. The manuscript nearest to the original is the one usually known as the Parker Chronicle, because it belongs to the Parker collection of manuscripts in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge (MS. 173); it is also, though less frequently, referred to as the Winchester Chronicle because a large number of its entries were made by the monks at Winchester. It ends with the year 1070. The other manuscripts are Cotton Otho B XI, badly burned, a copy of the Parker; Cotton Tiberius B I, often called the Abingdon Chronicle because it was kept by the monks of Abingdon; Cotton Tiberius A VI, which as far as it goes is identical with the Abingdon; Cotton Tiberius B IV, known as the Worcester Chronicle; Laud Misc. 636 (Bodleian Library), also called the Peterborough Chronicle, which continues to the year 1154; and Cotton Domitian A VIII, a Canterbury Chronicle, an epitome of the Peterborough.

Of these seven manuscripts, the Parker and the Peterborough are the most important. The edition of them made by Earle and revised by Plummer, entitled *Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel* (Oxford, Vol. I, 1892, Vol. II, 1899), is still the authoritative one. This work also contains many supplementary extracts from the other Chronicles. A six-text edition of the Chronicle with translation was made in 1861 by Thorpe.

The following selections are divided into two groups, those dealing with the early invasions of the Danes and the reign of Alfred, covering the period from 787 to 901; and those narrating the later invasions of the Danes and the Norman Conquest of England, from 991 to 1066. The text of the first group is based on the Parker Chronicle, of the second on the Peterborough Chronicle. Earle and Plummer's edition also has been consulted.
EARLY INVASIONS OF THE DANES

787. Hēr nēm Beorhtric cyning Offan dohtor Æadburge; and on his dagum cuōmon ārest iii scipu, and þā sē gerēfa þértō rād, and hie wolde drīfan tō þēs cyninges tūne þy hē nyste hwæt hie wāron; and hiene mon ofsāg. Þat wāron þā ārestan scipu Deniscra monna þe Angelcynnes lond gesōhton.

833. Hēr gefeaht Ecgbryht cyning wiþ xxxv sciphlæsta at Carrum; and þēr wearþ micel wēl geslēagen, and þā Denescan āhton wælstōwe gewald; and Hereferþ and Wīgþēn, tuēgen bisē-pas, forþfērdon, and Dudda and Ósmōd, tuēgen aldorman, forþ-fērdon.

837. Hēr Wulfheard aldorman gefeaht at Hāmtūne wiþ xxxiii sciphlæsta, and þēr micel wēl geslēg, and sige nōm; and þy gēare forþfērde Wulfheard; and þy ilcan gēare gefeaht Æþelhelm dux wiþ Deniscene here on Port mid Dornsātum, and gōde hwile þone here gefēiemde, and þā Deniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald, and þone aldorman ofsāgon.

840. Hēr Æþelwulf cyning gefeaht at Carrum wiþ xxxv sciphlæsta, and þā Deniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald.

851. Hēr Ceorl aldorman gefeaht wiþ hāþene mēn mid Defenascēre at Wicganbeorge, and þēr micel wēl geslēgon, and sige 20 nāmon; and þy ilcan gēare Æþelstān cyning, and Ealchēre dux micelne here ofsēgon at Sondwic on Cent, and ix scipu gefēngun, and þā òpere gefēiemdon; and hāþene mēn ārest ofer winter sētōn; and þy ilcan gēare cuōm fōrōc healf hund scipa on Temese mūban, and brācon Contwaraburg, and Lundenburg, and gefēiemdon Beorhtwulf Miercna cyning mid his fierde, and forōn þā sūþ ofer Temese on Sūþrgyz; and him gefeaht wiþ Æþelwulf cyning and Æþelbald his sunu at Ācēa mid West Seaxna fierde, and þēr þēt māste wēl geslēgon on hāþnum herige þē wē seégan hierdon of þēsne andweardan dēg, and þēr sige nāmon.
866. Hēr fēng Aēberēd Aēpelbryhtes brōbur tō Wesseaxna rice; and þē ilcan gēare cuōm micel here on Anglecynnnes lond, and wintersetl nāmon on Ēast Englum, and þær gehorsude wurdon, and hie him frīþ wib 1 nāmon.

867. Hēr fōr sē here of Ēast Englum ofer Humbre mūban tō Eoforwicceastre on Norphymbre, and þær wēs micel ungeþuērnes þēre þēode betweox him selfum, and hī hēfdun hīera cyning ñworpenne Õsbryht, and ungecyndne cyning underfēngon Ællan: and hīe late on gēare tō þām gecirdon þæt hīe wīþ ðone here winnende wārun, and hīe þēah mīcle fīerd gegadrodon, and þone 40 here söhton ñt Eoforwicceastre, and on þæ ceastre brāçon, and hīe sume inne wurdon, and þær wēs ungemetlic wǣl geslēgen Norþanhybra, sume bīnna, sume būtan; and þā cyningas bēgen ofslēgene, and sīō láft wīþ ðone here frīþ nam; and þē ilcan gēare gefōr Ealchstān biscep, and hī hēfdæ þæt bisceprice l wumtra ñt Scireburnan, and hīe líc þēr on þūne.

871. Hēr cuōm sē here tō Rëadingum on West Seaxe, and þæs ymb iii niht ridon ii eorlas úp; þā gemētte hīe Aþelwulf aldorman on Englafelda, and hīm þær wīþ gefēahht and sige nam. þæs ymb iii niht Aēberēd cyning and Ælfred his brōbur þær mīcle 50 fīerd tō Rëadingum gelāddon, and wīþ ðone here gefuhton, and þær wēs micel wǣl geslēgen on gehwāþre hond, and Æþelwulf aldorman wērþ ofslēgen, and þā Deniscan āhton wǣlstōwe gewald; and þæs ymb iii niht gefēahht Aēberēd cyning and Ælfred his brōbur wīþ alne ðone here on Åescesdüne, and hīe wārun on twǣm gefyllum, on ðūrum wēs Bāchseag and Hāldene þā hēþnan cyningas, and on ðūrum wāron þā eorlas; and þā gefēahht sē cyning Aēberēd wīþ þāra cyninga getrumman, and þær wērþ sē cyning Bāgseag ofslēgen; and Ælfred his brōbur wīþ þāra eorla getrumman. and þær wērþ Sidroc eorl ofslēgen sē alda, and Sidroc eorl 60

1 MS., wanting; supplied by Earls.
se gionega, and Æsbearn eorl, and Fræna eorl, and Haruld eorl,
and þæ hægæ bëgen geþfælmeþ, and fela þusenda ofslægenra, and
onfeohtende wæron of niht. And þæsymb xiiii niht gefæht
Æþerðæ cyning and Ælfræd his bröður wiþ þone here at Basengum,
and þær þæ Deniscan sige nàmon; and þæsymb ii mònaþ gefæht
Æþerðæ cyning and Ælfræd his bröður wiþ þone here at Meretüne,
and hie wærun on tuæm gefylcium and hie bûtn geþfælmeþ, and
lounge on dæg sige ãhton, and þær wearþ micel wælsliht on gehwæ-
þere bond, and þæ Deniscan ãhton wælstowe gewald; and þær
wearþ Héahmund biscep ofslægen, and fela gódra monna; 70
and æfter þissum gefeohte cuom micel sumorlida; and þæs ofer
Éastron gefor Æþerðæ cyning, and hie ricsode v þear, and his lie
liþ set Winburnan.

þæ fæng Ælfræd Æþelwulfing his bröður tò Wesseaxna rice; and
þæsymb ãne mònaþ gefæht Ælfræd cyning wiþ aìne þone here
lytle wereþe æt Wiltüne, and hine longe on dæg geþfælmeþ, and
þæ Deniscan ãhton wælstowæ gewald; and þæs géares wurdun viii-
folc-gesoht gefohten wiþ þone here on þy cynerice be sùþan
Temese, bûtan 1 þám þe him Ælfræd þæs cyningæs bröður, and
fælþæ Aldormon, and cyningæs þegnas oft râde onridon þe so
mon nà ne rímde, and þæs géares wærun ofslægene viii eorlas and
ãn cyning; and þy géare nàmon West Seaxe friþ wiþ þone here.

878. Héru hiene bestæl së here on midne winter ofer tueltan 2
niht tò Cippanhamme, and geridon Wesseaxna lond and gesæþan
micel þæs fóleaþ and ofer së ádræfdon, and þæs ôpres þone mãstan
déal hie geridon, and him tò geceþdon bûton þám cyningæ Ælfræde.
And hë lylte wereþe uneþelice æfter wudem fôr, and on mórfæ-
estenæ; and þæs ilcan wintra wæs Inwaræs bröður and Healfdænes
on West Seaxum on Defenasciëre mid xxiii scipum, and hiene mon
þær ofsölgb, and deoce monna mid him, and xì monna his heres; 96

1 MS. and before butan. 2 MS. tueltan.
and þes on Æastron worhte Ælfrēd cyning lītle werede geweorc ęt Æpelingaegge, and of þam geweorc was winnende wiþ þone here, and Sumursætna sē dēl sē þār nihe st was; þā on þāre seofoðan wiecan ofer Æastron hē gerād tō Ecgbryhtesstāne be ēstān Sealwyda, and him tō cómon þār oncēn Sumorsæte alle, and Wilsætan, and Hāmtūnsoīr sē dēl sē hieron se was, and his gefægene wērun; and hē fōr ymb ðāne niht of þam wicum tō Íglēa, and þes ymb ðāne tō Êhandūne, and þār gefeαht wiþ alne þone here, and hiene geflēmede and him æfter rād oþ þæt geweorc, and þār sæt xiiii niht; and þā salde sē here him foregislas and 100 micle āpas, þæt hē of his rice uuolden, and him ēac gehētōn þæt hiera kyning fulwihte onfōn wolde, and hē þæt gelǣston swā; and þēse ymb iii wiecan cūm sē cyning tō him Godrum þētigam sum þāra monna þē in þām here weorþste wēron ęt Alre, and þēt is wiþ Æpelingaegge; and his sē cyning þār onfēng tēt fulwihte, and his crismlising was þēt Wēbmōr, and hē was xii niht mid þēm cyninge, and hē hine mīclum and his gefēaran mid fēo weorðēde.

882. Hēr fōr sē here ūp onlong Māse feor on Fronclond, and þār sæt ān gēær. And þē ilēcan gēare fōr Ælfrēd cyning mid scipum ūt on sē, and gefeαht wiþ fēower sciphlæstas Deniscra monna, 110 and þēra scipa tū genamen, and þē men ofsλægene wēron þē sēr on wēron, and tūgen sciphlæstas hīm on hond ēodon, and þē wēron mīclum forsλægene and forwundode ēr hē on hond ēodon.

886. Hēr fōr sē here eft wēste þē ēr ēast gelende, and þā ūp on Sigene, and þār wintersetl nāmēn. þē ilēcan gēare gesetē Ælfrēd cyning Lundburg, and him all Angeleyn tō cirde, þēt būton Denisera monna hēftnēde was, and hē þā befēste þā burg Æpērēde aldormen tō haldonne.

891. Hēr fōr sē here ēast and Earnulf cyning gefeαht wiþ tām rǣdehere ēr þā scipu cūmon, mid Ēast-Francum, and Sea-

1 MS. sciphēnas; corrected from other MSS. by Earle.
THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE 157

xum, and Bægerum, and hine gesiæmede; and þære Scottas cōmon tō Ælfrēde cyninge, on ānum bāte būtan ælceum gerebrum of Hibernia, þonon hī hi bestælon forþon þe hī woldon for Godes lufan on elþiodignesse bēon, hī ne rōhten hwēr. Sē bāt wæs geworht of þriddan healfre hīde þe hī on fōron, and hī nāmon mid him þæt hī hærfōn tō seofon nihtum mete; and þæ cōmon hī e ymb vii niht tō londe on Cornwalum, and fōron þā sōna tō Ælfrēde cyninge; þūs hī wēron genemnde, Dubslane and Maccbethu and Mælinmun; and Swifneh, sē betsta lārēow þe on Scottum wæs, gefōr.

892. And þū ilcan gēare ofer Ēastron, ymbe gangdagas 130 ọfþe ār, ætōwde sē steorra þe mon on bōclāden hēt cometa, same men cweþab on Englisc þæt hit sē feaxede steorra, forþhēm þær stent lang lēoma of, hwilum on āne healfē, hwilum on ælice healfē.

893. Hēr on þysum gēare fōr sē micla here, þe wē gefyrn ymbe sprēacon, eft of þēm ēastrice westweard tō Bunnan, and þær wūrden gescipode, swā þæt hī æsettan him on ānne sīp ofer mid hōrsmon mid ealle, and þā cōmon ūp on Limene múḥan, mid cel hūnde scīpa. Sē múpha is on ēasteweardre Cent set þēs miclan 4 wudā ēastende þe wē Andred hātað; sē wūdā is ēastlang and 140 westlang hundtwēftiges mīla lang ọfþe lengra, and þrīties mīla brād; sēo ðā þe wē ār ymbe sprēacon līd ūt of þēm wealda; on þā ðā hī tugon ūp hīora scīpu ọf þone weald iii mīla fram þēm múḥan ūteweardum, and þær ēbrēcon ān geweorc; inne on þēm fāstenne 5 sētōn fēawa cīrliscen men on, and wēs sāmworht.

Þā sōna ǣfter þēm cōm Hæsten mid lxx scīpa ūp on Temese múðan, and worhte him geweorc set Middeltūne, and sē ǭber here set Apuldrē.

895. Ond þā sōna ǣfter þēm on ðýs gērē for sē here of Wirhēale

1 MS. miclam.
2 MS. fenne; em. by Earle from evidence of other MSS. and of Latin historians.
in on Norð Wealas, for þaem hie ðær sittan ne mehton; þæt wæs forðy þe hie wæron benumene ægðer ge þæs cæpes, ge þæs cornes, þe hie gehergod hæfdon. Þa hie ðæa eft ðut of NorÐ Wealum wendon mid þære herehyðe þe hie ðær genumen hæfdon, þa foron hie ofer Norðhymbra lond and Êast Engla, swá swá seo fird hie geræcan ne mehte, ofþæt hie cōmon on Êast Seaxna lond ðæt-ward, on án igland þæt is úte on þære sæ, þæt is Meresig hāten. And þa sæ here eft hāmweard wende, þe Exanecaster beseten hæðe, þa hergodon hie úp on Sūð Seaxum nēah Cisseceastre, and þa burgware hie gefliemdon, and hira monig hund ofslögon, and hira scipu sumu genāmon.

Dans þy ilcan gēre onforan wintor þa Deniscan þe on Meresige sæton tugon hira scipu úp on Temese, and þa úp on Lýgan. Þæt wæs ymb twā gēr þæs þe hie hider ofer sæ cōmon.

896. On þy ylcan gēre worhte sæ foresprecena here geweorc be Lýgan xx milla bufan Lundenbyrig. Þa þæs on sumera foron micel dæl þára burgwara, and ðæc swá ðþæs folces, þæt hie gedydon æt þára Deniscana geweorce, and þær wurdon gefliemde, and sume ðæower cyninges þegnas ofslæogene. Þa þæs on hærfeaste þa wicode sæ cyng on nēaweste þære byrig, þa hwile þe hie hira corne gerypon, þæt þa Deniscan him ne mehton þæs ripes forwiernan. Þa 170 sume dæge rād sæ cyng úp bī þære ðæc, and gehāwade hwær mon mehte þa ðā forwyrca, þæt hie ne mehton þa scipu útþrengan. Ond hie ðā swā dydon; worhton ðā tū geweorc on twā healfe þære ðæs. Þa hie ðā þæt geweorc furþum ongunnen hæfdon, and þær to gewicod hæfdon, þa onget sæ here þæt hie ne mehton þa scipu útþrengan. Þa forlēton hie hie, and ðædon ofer land þæt hie gedydon æt Cwâtbrycge be Sæfern, and þær gewerc worhton. Þa rād sæo fird west æfter þæm herige, and þa men of Lundenbyrig gefetedon þa scipu, and þa ealle þe hie ðæðan ne mehton tōbræcon, and þa þe þær stælwyrcē wæron binnan Lundenbyrig ge-
brohten; and þa Deniscan hæfdon hie wif befest innan East Englæ ar hie ut of þâm geweorcse foron. Þa sæton hie þone winter at Cwätbrycege. Þæt wæs ymb þrœo gær þæs þe hie on Limene mûdan cómmon hider ofer sæ.

901. Hér gefor Ælfrêð Abûlfæg, syx nihtum ær ealra hæligræ massa. Sæ wæs cyning ofer eall Ongelcyn butan ðæm dæle þe under Dena onwalde wæs, and hê hœold þæt rice ðœrum healfum læs þe xxx wintra. And þa fêng Æadweard his sunu tó rice.

Þa geråd Ægelwald his fædren sunu þone hâm sæt Winburnan, and sæt Tweoxneam butan ðæs cyninges læafe and his wîtena. 190 þa råd sæ cyning mid firde þæt hê 1 gewlcode sæt Baddanbyrig wic Winburnan, and Ægelwald sæt binnan þæm hâm mid þæm monnum þe him tó gebugon, and hæfde ealle þa geatuforworht in tó him, and sæde þæt hê wolde ðæter oðræ þær libban oðræ þær liçgan. Þa under þæm þa bestæl hê hine on niht on weg, and gesœhte þone hære on Norðhymbrum, and sæ cyng hêt ridan æfter, and þa ne mehte hine mon ofridan. Þa beråd mon þæt wif þæt hê hæfde ær genumen butan cynges læafe and ofer þara biscopa gebed, forðon ðe hêo wæs ær tó nunnan gehálgod. And on þês ilcan gêre forôférde Ælferêð, wæs on Defenum ealdormon, 200 fœower wucum ær Ælfrêð cyning.

SECOND DANISH INVASIONS

THE CONQUEST OF ENGLAND

991.1 Hér wæs Gypeswic 2 gehergod and æfter þám swiðe raðe wæs Brihtnoð ealdorman ofslægen æt Mældûne; and on þám gæare man gerædde þæt man geald ærest gasol Deniscan mannum for

1 MS. of he written over erasure; em. by Earle from MS. B.
2 From this date on the text follows the Peterborough Chronicle.
3 Between G and wic there is a blank in the MS.; ypes is supplied by Earle from MSS. C and D.
160 READER

põm mycclan brôgan þe hi worhtan be þãm sãrîmân. þæt wæs ðrêst x þûsend punda. ðæne ræd gerædde Siric areebiscep.

994. Hêr on þisum gêare côm Anláf and Swegen tô Lundenbyrig on Nativitas Sancte Marie mid iii and hundnigontigum scipum, and hî ðâ on ðâ burh festlice feoctende wæron, and ëac hî mid fyre ontendan woldon, ac hî þær gefêordon märan hearw and 210 yfel ponne hî æfre wêndon þæt heom ënig burhwaru gedôn scolde. Ac sê hâlige Godes módor on ðâm hire mildheortnisse ðère burhware geçyðde and hî æhrêdde wið heora fêondum; and hî ðanon fêrđon and wrohton þæt mæste yfel þe æfre ënig here dôn mihte on bærnette and hergunge and on manslihtum ægðer be ðâm sãrîmân on East Seaxum, and on Centlande, and on Sûð Seaxum, and on Hântûnseire; and ët nýxtan nânman heom hors and ridon swâ wide swâ hî woldon, and unâsegendlice yfel wircende wæron. ðâ gerædde sê cyng and his witan þæt him man tô sende, and him gafol behête and metsunge wið þon þe hî þære hergunge geswicon; 220 and hî þâ þet underfêngon. And côm þâ eall sê here tô Hântûne, and þêr wintersetle námôn, and hî man þêr fêdde geond eall West Seaxna rice, and him man geald xvi þûsend punda. þâ sende sê cyng 1 æfter Anlâce cyninge Ælfeach biscep and Æoelward ealdorman, and man gislade þâ hwile intô þâm scipum; and hî þâ læddan Anláf mid mycclum wurðescipe tô þâm cyunge tô Andesêran, and sê cyng Æoelrêd his anfêng æt biscepes handa, and him cynellice gifode. And him þâ Anláf behêt swâ hî hit ëac gelêste þæt hâ næfre eft tô Angelcynne mid unfrîðe cemon noðû. Hic Ricardus uetus obiit, et Ricardus filius eius suscepit regnum et reg- 230 nauti xxxi annos.

1011. Hêr on þissum gêare sende sê cyng and his witan tô ðâm here and geormdon friðes, and him gafol and metsunga behêtan wið þâm þe hî heora hergunga geswicon.

1 MS. cyn, with space for one more letter.
Hi heafdon þa ofergân Æst Engla i, and Æst Seaxe ii, and Middel Seaxe iii, and Oxenafordscire iii, and Grantabrycescire v, and Heortfordscire vi, and Bucingahámsecre vii, and Bedanfordscire viii, and healfa Huntadünsecre x, and be sücan Temese ealle Centingas, and Süç Seaxe, and Hæstingas, and Süðrig, and Bearrusescire, and Hámhumbersecre, and micel on Wiltunscire.

Ealle þæs ungesåltças ús gelumpon þurh unrádes, þæt mann nolde him tó timan gafol bëdan, ac þonne hi mæst tó yfele gedôn hæfdon, þonne nam man grô and frið wið hi; and nadeæs for eallum þisum grôe and friðe and gafole hi fêrdon äghwider folc-målum, and hergodon and ãre earme folc-répton and slôgon. And on þissum gêare betwyx Natiuit' Sancte Marie and Sancte Michaelæs messan hi ymbe sætan Cantwaraburh; and hi þærin tó cêmon þurh syrewrenceas; forþon Ælmær hi bécyrde Cantwaraburh, þe sê arcebiscep Ælfþah ãr generede his life. And hi þær þa genâman þone arcebiscep Ælfþah, and Ælfword þæs cynges 250 gerêfan, and Leófwine abbod, and Godwine biscep; and Ælmær abbod hi lætan ãweg. And hi þær genâman inne ealle þa gehádode ãmenn and weras and wið; þat was unâsecgendlice ânigum menn hi mycel þæs folces wæs; and on þære byrig siðdon wær on swâ lange swâ hi woldon. And þa hi hæfdon þa burh ealle ästmâde, wendon him þa tó scipon and læddon þone arcebiscep mid him.

Wæs ða ræpling,1 sê þe ãr wæs
Angelcynnes hêafod, and Cristendômes;
þær man mihte þa gesêon earmôe
þær man ãr gesæh blisse,
on þære ærman byrig, þanon ús côm ærest
Cristendôm, and blisse for Gode, and for vorulde.

And hi heafdon þone arcebiscep mid him swâ lange ðæ þone timan þe hi hine gemartyredon.

1013. On þâm æftan gêare þe sê arcebiscep wæs gemartyrod.
Be cyng gesætte Lifing biscep tō Cantwarabyrig tō ōm arcestōle. And on þām iclean gēare tōforan þām mōnē Augustus cōm Swegen cyning mid his flotan tō Sandwic and wende swyðe raðe ābūtan Ēast Englum, intō Humbran mūðan, and swā uppweard andlang Trentan þet hē cōm tō Gægnesburh. And þā sōna ābēah 27c Uhtrēd eorl and eall Norðhymbra tō him and eall þæt folc on Lindesige and sydōnan þet folc of Fīfburhingan, and rāðe þēs eall here be norōan Wætlinga strāte, and him man sealde gislas of scēre. Sydōnan hē undergeat þet eall folc tō hēm gebogen wēs, þā bēad hē þæt man sceolde his here metian and horsian; and hē þā gewende sydōnan sūðweard mid fulre fyrde, and betāhte his scīpe and þā gislas Cnūte his sunu. And sydōnan hē cōm ofer Wæclingastrāte, hi wrohton þæt mǣste yfel þe ānig here dōn mihte. Wende þā tō Oxnafordera and sēo burhwaru sōna ābēah and gīslode; and þænon tō Winceastre and þæt ilce dydon. Wen- 280 don þā þænon ēastward tō Lundene; and mycel his folces ādrenc on Temese, forōm hī nānre brycge ne cēpton. Þā hē tō þāre byrīg cōm, þā nolde sēo burhwaru ābūgan ac hēoldan mid fullan wihte ongēan, forōm þær wēs inne sē cyning Æpelrēd, and Þūrkal mid him. Þā wende Swegen cyning þænon tō Wealingaforda, and swā ofer Temese westward tō Baðon and sæt þær mid his fyrde. And cōm Æpelmer ealdorman þīder, and þā weasternan þēgnas mid him, and bugon ealle tō Swegene and gīslodon. Þā hē eall þūs gefaren heafde, wende þā norōweard tō his scipon; and eall þēodsceipe hine heafde for fullne cyning; and sēo burhwaru 29a after þām on Lundene bēah and gīslode, forþam hī ondrēddon þæt hē hī fordan wolde. Bēad þā Swegen full gild and metsunga tō his here þone winter; and Þūrcyl bēad þæt ilce tō þām here þē læg on Grēnawic; and būton þām hī hergodan swā oft swā hī woldon. Þā ne duhte nāðor þisse þēoda ne sūðan 1 ne norōan; þā wēs sē cyng sume hwile mid þām flotan þē on Temese wāron....

1 MS. sudan.
1014. Hér on þissum gēare Swegen geendode his dagas tó Candelmaessan iii No. Februarius, and sē flota eall geçuron Cnút tó eyninge. Ðā gerāddan þā witan ealle, ge hādode ge læwede, þæt man æfter þám eyninge Æðelrēde sende, and cwæðon þæt 300 him nān læofre hlāford nære þonne heora gecynde hlāford, gif hē hi rihticeor healdan wolde þonne hē ēr dyde. Ðā sende sē cyng his sunu Æadward mid his ærendracan hider, and hēt grētæn ealne his lēodscepe, and cwæð þæt hē heom hold hlāford bēon wolde, and ælc þeora þinga bētan þe hē ealle æscunedon, and ælc þeora þinga forgifan bēon sceolde þe him¹ gedōn oððe gecweðen wēre, wīc þām þe hē ealle ænrödlice būton swicdēmē tō him gecyrdon. And man þā fullne frēondscepe gefæstnode mid worde and mid wædde on ægðere healfe, and æfre ælcne Deniscne ² cyning utlagede of Englande gecwadon. Þā cōm Æðelrēd cyning innan þām 316 lecūtnē hām tō his ægenre þēode, and hē glǣdlēc fram heom eallum onfangen wēs. And þā syðodon Swegen dēad wēs, sætt Cnūt mid his here on Gegnesburh oð hē Æastron; and gewærð him and þām folce on Lindesige ðēnes, þæt hē hine horsian sceoldan, and syðdon ealle ætægðere faran and hergian. Ðā cōm se cyning Æðelrēd mid fulre fyrde þider ēr hē gearwe wāron tō Lindesige, and mann þā hergode and bernde and slēh eall þet mancynn þæt man ðærēcan mihte. Sē Cnūt gewende him ūt mid his flotan and weard þet earne folc þus beswican burh hine, and wāende þā suðweard oð þæt hē cōm tō Sandwic, and lēt þær ēp þā gislas þe hēs fæder 320 gesalde wāron, and ceart of heora handa and heora nosa. And būton eallum þisum yfelum sē cyning hēt gyldan þām here þe on Grēnewīc læg xxi þūsend punda. And on þissum gēare on Sancte Michæles mæsse-ēfan cōm þet mycel seofnōd geond wide þisme eard, and ærn swā fēor ēp swā nēfre ēr ne dyde, and ādrencte feals tuān and manncynnes unārīmædllice geteall.

¹ MS. hi. 
² MS. Deniscene.
1017. Here is sum geare fæng Cnut cyning tō eall Angelcynnes rice, and hit tōdæld on fower: him sylfum West Seaxan, and þūrcyll Eōst Englan, and Eadric Myrcean, and Yrice Norð-hymbran. And on þisum geare wæs Eadric ealdormann 338 ofslagen, and Norðman Lēofwines sunu ealdormannes, and Æðel-word Æðelmâres sunu þæs grātan, and Brihtric Ælfgetes sunu on Dæriangærre. And Cnút cyng æflýmde út Ædwig æðeling, and Æadwig ceorla cyng; and þā tōforan KL. Augustus hēt sē cyng feccan him Æðelrêdes lāfe þēs ðōres cynges him tō cwēne Ricardes dohtor.

1036. Here forðférde Cnut cyng æt Sceafesbyrg, and hē is bebyrged on Winceastre on Ealdan mynstre; and hē wæs cyng ofer eall Englanland swyðe nēh xx wintra. And söna æfter his foresfē wæs ealra witena gemōt on Oxnaforða, and Lēofric 340 eorl and mæst ealle þā þegenas benorðan Temese and þā līðmenn on Lunden gecuron Harold tō healdes ealles Englanlandes him and his brōðer Hardacnûte þe wæs on Denemearcon. And Godwine eorl and ealle þā yldestan menn on West Seaxon lágon quadrān swā hī lengost mihton, ac hē ni mihton nān þing ongēan wēalcan. And mān gerǣdde þā þæt Ælfgīuf, Hardacnûtes mōdor, sæte on Winceastre mid þēs cynges hūscælum hyrā suna, and hēoldan ealle West Seaxan him tō handa, and Godwine eorl wæs heora healdest mann. Sume men sædon be Haroldæ þæt hē wēre Cnutes sunu cynges and Ælfgīue, Ælfelmes dohtor ealdormannes, ac æsc hit þūhte swīðe ungelēaflic manegum mannum. And hē wæs þæh full cyng ofer eall Englanland.

1039. Here forðférde Harold cyng on Oxnaforða on xvi KL. Aprēlis and hē wæs bebyrged æt Westmynstre; and hē wælde Englanlandes ἰἱ gēar and xvi wucan. And on his dagum mân geald xvi scipan, æt ælcere hamulan viii marc, eall swā mān ær dyde on Cnutes cynges dagum. And on þis ǣlcan gēar cōm
Hardacnut cyng to Sandwic vii nihtum &r middan-sumera; and he wæs sona underfangen ge fram Anglum ge fram Denum, þeah þe his rædes-nenn hit syðdon strange forguldon, þæa hi ge- 360 rædden þet man geald lxii scipon, sæt ælceræ hamelan viii marc. And on his ilecan geare ȝode sæster hwætes to lv penega and sæc furðor.

1041. Hær forðfærde Hardacnut cyng sæt Lambhyðe on vi ID. Junius, and he wæs cyng ofer eall Englaland twæ gær buton x nihtum; and he is bebyrged on Ealdan mynstre on Winceastræ mid CNûte cyngæ his fæder. And ūar þan þe he bebyrged wære, eall folc geceðas Æadward tō cyngæ on Lundene, healde þā hwile þe him God unne. And eall þet gæar wæs wiðe hefig time on manegum þingum, and mislicum ge on unwæderum ge on eorðwæstnum, 370 and swā mycel orfes wæs þæs gæres forfaren swā nān man ër ne gemunde, ægðer ge þurh mistlice coða ge þurh ungewyderu....

1066. On þissum geare man hlægode þet mynster sæt Westmyn- stræ on Cildamæssedæg. And sæ cyng Æadward forðfærde on twelftæ mæsse-æfen; and hine mann bebyrgede on twelftan mæsse- dæg innan þære niwan hlægodre circæan on Westmynstre. And Harold eorl fæng tō Englalædes cynerice swā swā sæ cyng hit him geþæfe ænd ëac men hine þær tō geçuron; and wæs geblætsod tō cyngæ on twelftan mæsse-ðæg. And þý ilecan geare þe he cæng wæs he fyr ðet mid sciphere tōgeæanes Willelmæ; and þā hwile cōm 380 Tostig eorl intō Humbræ mid lx scipum. Æadwine eorl cōm mid 1 landfyrde ænd dræf hine ýt; and þā butse-carlas hine forsœcan ænd he fyr tō Scotlædes mid xii snaccesæ, ænd hine gemētte Harold sē Norrena cyng mid ccc scipum, ænd Tostig him tōbeæh. And hi bægen foran intō Humbræ oð þet hi cōman tō Eoferwic, ænd heom wið feaht Morkæ eorl ænd Æadwine eorlæ, ænd sē Norrena cyng æhte siges gewæld. And man cydde Haroldæ 2 cyng hū hit wæs

1 MS. mid wanting; supplied by Earle.  
2 MS. Harode.
bær gedôn and geworden, and hē cōm mid mycelum here Engliscra
manna and gemētte hine ðæt Stængfôrdesbrycgge and hine ofslōh,
and þone eorl Tostig, and eallne þone here āhtlice ofercôm. ðæ
And þā hwile cōm Willelm eorl upp ðæt Héstingan on Sancte
mícæles mēsse-dæg; and Harold cōm noðan and him wið feahht
cēr þan þe his here cōme eall; and þær hē fēoll, and his twāgen
gebrōðra Gyrð and Ûeofwine; and Willelm þis land geēode, and
cōm tō Westmynstre, and Êaldrēd arcebiscēp hine tō cynge ge-
hālgode, and menn guðdon him gyld and gīslas sældon, and syððan
heora land bohtan....
THE OLD ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF BEDE

In the seventh and eighth centuries Northumbria was the center of learning and culture in England, a culture which ultimately produced the famous school of York, known throughout Europe, and which culminated in the great scholar, Alcuin, who bore the learning of York to the court of Charlemagne. Among the many scholars who helped to establish this culture the greatest was Bede, a monk in the monastery of Jarrow near Whitby. Bede was born about 673 and he spent his entire life, from the age of seven until his death in 735, in the monastery. He was a prolific writer, composing treatises on grammar, rhetoric, and science in addition to his many religious works. Of all his books the most important is his Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum, which covers the period from the coming of Julius Caesar to the year 731, the date when the work was completed. This is more than a history of the Church in England. The Church formed such an integral part of the life of the times, that Bede's work is really a history of the nation in the early years of its existence, and as such is invaluable to any student of the period.

As may be inferred from the title, the book is in Latin, the language used by all the Northumbrian scholars. About a hundred and fifty years after Bede's death, King Alfred had the Historia translated into Old English, in accordance with his plan to familiarize his people with books he thought valuable. The original manuscript of this translation is lost. There are, however, five extant manuscripts: MS. 279, Corpus Christi College, Oxford (C), dating from the tenth or early eleventh century, with a few pages lost at the beginning and the end; Tanner MS. 10 at the Bodleian
Library (T), dating from the tenth century, and also with parte missing; MS. K. k. 3. 18 of the Cambridge University Library (Ca), a copy of Oxford 279; MS. 41, Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; Cotton Otho B XI, which is badly burned, in the British Museum. The two authoritative editions of Bede are by T. Miller (Early English Text Society, Old Series, 95, 96, 1890–91), and by J. Schipper in his Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Prosa, Vol. 4, Leipzig, 1899.

Of the following selections, the first is Bede's introductory account of the island of Britain. The next two relate the coming of the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes to the island, and the early victories of the British over the Saxons, notably at the Battle of Mt. Badon, in which, according to other sources, King Arthur was the victor. The story of Gregory and the slave boys in the fourth selection, which shows alike Gregory's love of punning and his zeal for Christianity, is too familiar to need comment. The fifth selection, the account of King Edwin's conversion to Christianity, gives an interesting picture of the meeting of an Anglo-Saxon council of wise men, and is also famous for the passage in which man's life on earth is compared to a sparrow's flight through a lighted hall, a passage used by Wordsworth in his sixteenth Ecclesiastical Sonnet. The final selection, the story of Cædmon, is the well-known narrative of the divine inspiration of this Old English poet. The monastery with which Cædmon was associated was at Whitby, not far from Jarrow, and Bede must have been well acquainted with the history of Whitby and its inmates. Cædmon presumably was still living at the time of Bede's birth.

Three manuscripts, Corpus Christi, Oxford, 279 (C), Tanner 10 (T), and Cambridge University, K. k. 3. 18 (Ca), have been used in preparing the following text. The first three selections are taken from Ca. The Tanner MS. begins with Sume on page 173, line 51.
From that point on, it has been collated with Ca. MS. C does not contain any of these first chapters. The other three selections are based on C, collated with T wherever extant, and with Ca. Miller’s and Schipper’s editions have been consulted.

I. DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN AND IRELAND

Book I, Chapter 1

Breoton ist gärsecges ēalond, Þæt wæs ðū gēara Albion hāten: is geseted betwyh norōðæle and westdæle, Germānīe ond Gallie ond Hispanic pām mǣstum dālum Europē myccoli face ongēgen. Þæt is norō ehta hund mila lang, ond tū hund mila brād. Hit hafað fram sūðdæle þā mægbe ongēan, þe mon hātep Gallia Bellica. Hit is weilig þis ēalond on wæstmum ond on trēowum misenlicra cynna; ond hit is gescraēpe on lāswe scēapa ond nēta; ond on sumum stōwum wingsardas grōwāþ. Swylce ðæc þēos eorðe is berende misenlicra fugela on sǣwihta, ond fiscwyllum wæterum ond wyllgespryngum, ond hēr bēoð oft fangene sēolas ond hronas and mereswīn; ond hēr bēoð oft numene misenlicra cynna weolcscylle ond muscule, ond on þām bēoð oft gemētte þā betstan mērgrōtan ālces hiwes. Ond hēr bēoð swēþe genihtsume weolocas of þām bīþ geworht sē weolocrēada tælgh, þone ne meg sunne blǣcan ne ne regn wyrdan; ac swā hē bīþ yldrā, swā hē fuegerra bīþ.

Hit hafað ðæc þis land sealtseāgas; ond hit hafaþ hāt wæter, ond hāt baðo sēlere yldo ond hāde þūr hōdēlede stōwe gescraēpe. Swylce hit is ðæc berende on weega ōrum āres ond ðīrēnes, āledes ond seolfres. Hēr bīþ ðæc gemētet gāgātes: sē stān bīþ blǣc 23 gym; gif mon hine on fyr dēō, þonne fēoða þār neddran onweg.

1 Ca, gescrawe; Miller reads gescraēpe. 2 Ca, tælgh. 3 Ca omits regn; supplied from Miller’s reading of MS. Cotton Otho B XI.
Wæs ðis ðaland ðæc gēo gewurrød mid þam æðelestum ceastrum, ðæs wæs ðær ælukum, þæ þæ wæron mid weallum ond torrum ond geatum ond þam trunestum locum getimbrade, ðutan ðærum læsson unrim ceastra. Ond forðan þæ þis ðaland under þam sylfum norððæle middangeardes nyhst liged, ond leóhte nihtæ on sumera hafað, — swa þæt oft on middre nihte geftit cymed þam behealdendum, hwær hit si þæ æfengl þæm on morgen deagung — is on þon sweotol, þæt þis ðaland hafað mycele lengran dagas on sumera, ond swa ðæc nihta on wintra, þonne þæ sūð-30 dælas middangeardes.

Dis ðaland nū on andweardnysse æfter rīme fīf Moyses bōca, þām sēo godecunde æ awrīten is, fīf ðēoða gereordum ænne wisdom þær hēan sōþæstnysse ond þære sōðan hēanesse smēað ond andetteæð; þæt is on Angolcynnnes gereorde ond Bryttas ond Scottas ond Peohtas ond Lēdenwara: þæt ān is, þæt Lēden, on smēaunge gewrits eallum þam ðūrum gemǣne.

On fruman ærest wæron þysses ðalandes bīgengan Brytta sēne, fram þām hit naman onfēng. Is þæt sǣd, þæt hi cōmon fram Armorican þære mǣgeðe on Breetone, ond þā sūðdælas þysses ðalandes him gesǣt ond geahnodon.

Þā gelamp æfter þon þætte Peahte ðōð cōm of Scyðnia lande on scipum ond þā ymbærondon eall Breetone gemǣro, þæt hi cōmon on Scotland upp, ond þær gemǣton Scoetan þēode, ond him bǣdon setles ond eardungstōwe on heora lande betwyh him. Andswearedon Scottas, þæt heora land ne wāre tō þæs mycel, þæt hi mihton twā þēode gehabban. Ac cwǣdon: “Wē magon sōw sellan hālwende gehēahet, hwāt gē dōn magon. Wē witan heonan nōht fōr ðēor ðaland eastrīhte, þæt wē magon oft lēohtum dagum gesēon. Gif þæ ðōð sēcan wyllaþ, þonne magon gē þær 50 eardungstōwe habban: oðde gif hwyle sōw wiðstondeð, þonne gefultumiað wē sōw.” Ðā fērdon Peohtas in Breetone, ond on-
gunnon earðigan þa norðdālas þyse scealondes; ond Bryttas, swā wē ēr cwādon, þa suðdālas. Mid þy Peohtas wif nēfdon, bēdon him fram Scottum. Dā gēpafedon hi cēre ārēdnesse, ond him wif sealdon, þæt cēr sēo wise on tweōn cyme, þæt hi cōnne mā of þām wīfcyne him cyning curan þonne of þām wēpnedcyne: þæt gē tō dēg is mid Peohtum healden.

Dā, forðgongenre tīde, æfter Bryttum ond Peohtum, þridde cynn Scotta Bretone onŌfng on Pehta dāle, þā wāron cumene of Hibernia, Scotta ēlondæ, mid heora heretogan, Rēada hātte: oūþa mid frēondscipe oūþa mid gefeohte him sylfum betwiht hi sēcel ond eardungstōwe geānhodon, þā hi nū gēt habbað. Þæt cynn nū geond tō dēg Dālēadingas wāron hātene.

Hibernia, Scotta ēlondæ, ge on brādo his stealles ge on hāl-wendnesse ge on sāmyntnesse lyfta is betere mycle þonne Bretone land, swā þæt cēr sēdlon snāu leng ligeð þonne ðrīg dagas. Onf þār nānig mann for wintres cyle on sumera hēg ge māwēþ, ne scypene his nēatum ne timbreþ. Ne þār monn ēnigne snicendne wyrm ne ðēterne gesihē; ne þār ēnig nēdre liſian ne mæg; 70 forfōn of Bretone nēdran on scipum lēdde wāron, sōna swā hī cēs landes lyft gestuncan, swā swultron hī. Ëac nēah þan ealle þā cēng þe ðanon cumað wiþ ēlcum åttre magon. Þæt tō tācne is, þæt sume menn gesāwon, þā ðē wāron fram nēdran geslegene, þæt man scōf þāra bōca lēaf, þe of Hibernia cōman, ond þā sceafthān dyde on wēter, ond sealde drincan þām mannum; ond sōna wæs þæt åtter ofernumen, ond hī wāron gehālde. Is þæt ēlond welig on meolcum ond on hunige; ond wingeardas weaxað on sumum stōwmum, ond hit is fiscwylle ond fugolwylle, ond mārre on huntunge heorta ond rāna. Þis is āgendlice Scotta ēgel; heonon cōman swā sēo þridde ðēod Scotta, swā wē ēr cwādon, ēac be Bryttum ond Peohtum on Bretone.

1 Ca, ond þa. 2 Ca, is instead of ge.
II. THE COMING OF THE ANGLES, SAXONS, AND JUTES

Book I, Chapter 15

Da wæs ymb fæower hund wintra ond nigon ond fæowertig fram õres Drihtnes mennisçysses, ðæt Martiánus cáserÝ onfêng ond VII gêar hæfde. Sæ wæs syxta ðæc fæowertigum fram Agusto þám cáserÝ. ðæ Angelpêod ond Seaxna wæs gelåðod fram þám fore-sprecenan cyninge, ond on Breotone côm on þríþ myclum scypum; ond on ðastdâle þysses ðalondes eardungstôwe onfêng þurh ðæs ylcan cyninges bebod, þæ hî hider gelåðode, þæt 1 hî sceoldan for heora ðåle compian ond feochtan. Ond hî söna compedon wið heora gewinnan, þæ hî oft ær norðan onhergedon; ond Seaxan þá sige geslôgan. ðæ sendan hî hâm ðerenddracan ond hétôn 10 secgan þysses landes wæstmáernysse, ond Brytta yrçbo. Ond hî þá söna hider sendon máran sciphere strenggran wihtgena; ond wæs unoferswiðendlic weorud, þæ hî tõgædere geþêodde wâron. Ond him Bryttas sealdan ond geðafan eardungstôwe betwih him þæt hî 2 for sibbe ond for hælo heora ðåles campodon ond wunnan wið heora feôndum, ond hî him andlyfne ond åre forgêafen for heora gewinne. Cómôn hî of þríþ folcum þámi strængestan Germanie, þæt of Seaxum ond of Angle ond of Géatum. Of Géata fruman syndon Cantware, ond Wihtsætan; þæt is sæo ðêod þe Wiht þæt ðalond oneardæ. Of Seaxum, þæt is of þámi lande þe mon 2 hâtæ ðæ Ealdesteaxon, cóman ðæstseaxon ond ðûðseaxon ond Westseaxon. And of Engle cóman ðastingle ond Middelengle ond Myrce ond eall Norðhembæc cynn; is þæt land ðe Angulus is nemned, betwyh Géatum ond Seaxum; is sæð of þære tîde þe hî ðanon gewiton ðô tô ðæge, þæt hit wêste wunige. Wàron þá ðérest heora lăttêswas ond heretogan twêgen grêðôra, Hengest

1 Ca, symbol for þæt written above symbol for and. 2 Ca, he.
ond Horsa. Hī wārōn Wihtgylses suna, hēs fāder wās Wihta hātēn ond hēs Wihta fāder wās Wōden nēmned, of hēs stryndē monīgra māgōa cyningcynn fruman lǣdde. Ne wās ūā ylding tā hōn hēt hī hēapmālūm cōman mārān weorod of hēm ūōōude, 33 hē wē ēr gemynegodon. Ond hōt fōlc ūē hīder cōm ongan weaxan ond myclīan tō ūān swīē, hōt hī wārōn ūō mīcīlūm ege ūōm sylfēn landbigēngan ūē hī ēr hīder lǣdedon ūōd cygdon.

Æfter þissum hī ūā geweređon tō sumre tīde with Pehtum, hā hī ēr ūōr gefeoht feor ādrīfan. Ond ūā wārōn Seaxan sēcēndē inťīgan ond tōwyrēde heora gerelēs with Bryttas. Cygdon him openlīcē ond sēødōn, nemne hī him mārān andlyfnē sealdōn, hōt hī wōldan ūō sylfe niman ond hērgīn, þēr hī hit findan mihtōn. Ond sōnā ūā bēotungē dēdūm gefyldōn: bārōndōn ond ērgēdōn ond sōlōgan frām ēastsē oē westēs; ond him nēngi wiēōtdē. 40 Ne wās ungēlic wrēcē þām ūē in Chaldeas bārōndōn Hierusaleme weallās ond ūā cyneleīcē getīmbrō mid fīrē fornāmān for hēs Godes folcēs synnum. Swā ṣonne hēr frām þērē ārlē̈asān cēōde, hwāérē rihte Godes dōme, nēh cēastrā gehwylēcē ond lānd forhergeode wārōn.¹ Hrūsan āfōollān cyneleīcō getīmbrō ond ānlipē; ond gehwārō săcērdās ond māssepēōstās bētwēh wībedum wārōn slēgēnē ond cwyilōndē; bīscōpas mid fōlcūm būtōn ēnigēre ēre sēcwawunge ētgēdēre mid īserē ond līgē fornūmēnē wārōn. Ond ne wāś ēnig sē ūē bebyrigrīnysse sealde þām ūē swā hrēowlīcē ācwēalde wārōn. Ond monīge ūērē earman lāfē on wēstēnum 50 fanggēnē wārōn ond hēapmālūm stīcōde. Sume for hungrē heora fēōndōm ond hand ēōōon ond ēcēn hēōwdōm gehēōtōn, wīōnēn þē him mon andlyfnē forgeaf; sumē ofēr sē sorgēndē gewitōn; sumē forhtiēndē in ēōlē gebīdan, ond þērīēndum līfē on wūda, wēstēnē ond on ūēān clīfūm sorgēndē mōdē symlē wunuđōn.

¹ Ca, lānd wās forhergiēndē.
III. VICTORIES OF THE BRITISH OVER THE SAXONS

Book I, Chapter 16

And þa æfter ðon þe sê here wæs hām hweorfende ond hi hæfdom ðit ðämërde ond töstencote þa bīgengan þysses ēalondes, þā ongunnon hi sticcemælum 1 mōd ond mægæ niman; ond forðæodon of þām diglum stōwum þe hi ēr on behýdde wāron, ond ealre ðæmòdre gēðafunge heofonrīces fultumes him wāron biddende, þæt hi oð forwyrd ðēghwār fordiligade ne wāron. Wæs on þā tid heora heretoga ond lāttēow Ambrōsius ħāten, þōr naman Aureliānus. Sē wæs gōd man ond gemetfēst, Romānisces cynnes man. On þysses mānnes tid mōd ond mægæ Bryttas onfēngon; ond hē hi tō gefeohhte forðgecēgde ond him sige gehēt; ond hī ēac on þām 10 gefeohhte þurh Godes fultum sige onfēngon. Ond þā of þāre tīde hwīlum Bryttas, hwīlum eft Seaxan 2 sige geslōgan oð ðēt gēr ymbsetes þāre Beadonescan dūne, þā hi mycel wǣl on Angelcynne geslōgan, ymb ēowser ond ēowwertig wintra Angelcynnæs cyme on Breetone.

IV. POPE GREGORY AND THE ENGLISH SLAVE BOYS

Book II, Chapter 1

Nis ūs ȳonne sē hlīsa tō forswigienne, þe be ȳām ȳadigan Grē-gōrie ȳurh yldra mannæ segene tō ȳus becōm, for hwilcum intingan hē monad wāre, þæt hē swā geornfūle gīmennē dyde ymb þā hēlo ūre þōde. Secegǣ hī, þæt sume dāge þider nīwan cóme cēpemen of Brytēne ond monig cēpēng on cēapstōwe brōhte, ond ēac monige cōman tō bicgeanne þā þing. Þā gelamp hit þat Grē-gōrius betwyn hōre ǣc þyðer cóm, ond þā gesæh betwih ǣhr þing cēpecnihtas þār gesette wāron hwītes līchaman ond føgeres and-

1 Ca, sticcemælum; T, sticcemælum. 2 Ca, Seaxena; T, Seaxan.
whitan men ond ðælice gefæxe. Þæ þæ hi gesæh ond behæold, ðæ frægn 1 hæ, of hwilcum lande ðæðe of hwilcre þeode hi 10 brohte wæron. Sæde him mon, þæt hi of Breetone ðælænde brohte wæron, ond þæs ðælændes bitægan swylcere ansyne men wæron. Eft hæ frægn, hwæber þæ ylcan landléode cristene wæron, þe hi þæ gæn on hæþennesse gedwolum lifdan. Cwæþ him mon tō ond sæde, þæt hi hæþene wæron; ond hæ þæ of innweardre heortan swilce swæreætte ond þus cwæð: “Wælæ wæl þæt is sælic, þæt swa sægær feorh ond swa lēohætes andwlitan men scyle 2 ðægæn ond be- sittan þýstra ealdor.”

Eft hæ frægn hwæt sæo þæd nemned wære þe hi of cöman. Þæ ondswæroðe him mon þæt he Engle nemde wæron. Cwæð hæ: 20 “Wel þæt swa mæg, forþon hi engellice 3 ansyne habbað, ond ðæc swylce gedæfænað þæt hi enga efennyrefweardas on heofonum sic.” Þæ gyt hæ furþur frægn ond cwæþ: “Hwæt hætte sæo mægð þæ þæs nihtas hidor of gelæðedæ wæron?” Þæ ondswæroðe him mon ond cwæð þæt hi Dere nemde wæron. Cwæð hæ: “Wel þæt is ecweden Dere, de íra eætæ; þi seulan bæon of Godes yrre æbrödene ond þo Cristes mildheortnesse gecygede.” Þæ gæn hæ ðæcædæ hwæt hiora cyning hæten wære; ond him mon ondswæroðe ond cwæð þæt hæ Alle hæten wære. Ond þæ pleggæ hæ mid his wordum tō þæm noman ond cwæð: “Allælæia, þæt gedæfænað þætte Godes lóf 30 ðæres Scyppendes on þæm dælum sungen st.”

Ond hæ þæ sóna ðode tō þæm biseope ond tō þæm papan þæs apostolican setles, forþan hæ sylfa þæ gyt ne wæs biseop geworden; bæd hine þæt hæ Angelþæde on Breetone onsende hwylcehugu læroðas, þæt þurh þæ hi tō Criste gecyrde wæron, ond cwæð þæt he sylfa gearo wære mid Godes fultume þæt weorc tō gefremmanne, gif þæm apostolican papan þæt licade, ond þæt his willa ond his

1 C, frægn; T, Ca, frægn.
2 C, Ca, sceolan; T, scyle.
3 C, engellice; T, eællice; Ca, engellice.
lēfnes wære. Þā ne wolde sē pāpa ðæt þægean, ne þā burhware
þon mā, þæt swā æþele wer ond swā ēþungem ond swā ēþeard,
swā fœor fram him gewite. Ac hē sōna hraþe, þæs þe hē ðæt ðæst biseop geworden wās, þæt hē gefremede þæt weorc þæt hē længe
wilnade, ond þā hālgan lārœowas hider onsende, þe wē ær beforan
sædon. Ond hē, Śēs. Grīgorius, mid his trymoonessum ond mid his
gebedum wās gefultumiende, þæt hīora lār wāre wæstmberende
tō Godes willan ond tō rāde Angelcynne.

V. THE CONVERSION OF EDWIN

Book II, Chapters 12-13

Mid þy hē þā Paulinus sē biseop Godes word bodade ond
lārde, ond sē cyning ylde þā gyt tō gelīfanne, ond þūr suñe tīde,
swā swā wē ēr cwādon, gelimplicum āna sæt, ond geornlice mid
hine sylfne smēade ond þōhte hwǽt him sēlost tō dūnne wære ond
hwylc ēfæstnes him tō healdanne wære, þā wās sume dāge sē
Godes wer ingangende tō him þær hē āna sæt, ond sette his þā
swīðran hand him on þæt hēafod, ond hine ēc sóde hwæþer hē þæt
tācon ongytæn mihtæ. Þā oncnċow hē hit sōna sweotole, ond wēs
swīðe forht geworden ond him tō fōtum fœoll; ond hine sē Godes
man ūp āhōf ond him cūdlice tō spræc, ond þūs cwǣð: 10
"Hwæt, þū nū hafast þūr Godes gyfe þīna fōnda hand be-
wicene, þā ū ū āndrēde, ond þū þūr his sylene ond gyfe þēm
rice onfēnge þē tū wilnadest. Ac gemynæ nū þæt þū þǣt þridde
gelēaste þæt þū gehēte, þæt þū onfō his gelēsan ond his bēboda
healde, sē þē þēc frām hwīlendlicum earfeðum generede ond ēsc
on ēre hwīlendlice rice āhōf. Ond gif ūfũ forð his willan hŷrsūm
bēon wīlt, þone hē þūr mē þē bōdaē ond lēreð, hē þonne þē ēsc
from tintregum generē ēcra 2 yfela, ond þē dālnimende gedē
mid hine þēsc ēcsc rice in hēfonum."

1 C, þa; Ca, T, ēa. 2 C, æcra; Ca, æcera: T, æcra.
Pa se cyning pa bas word gehyrde, pa ondsvarode he him 20
ond cwæð, paet he æghwaæger ge wolde ge sceolde þæm gelæfan
onfôn þe he lærde. Cwæð hwæþere, paet he wolde mid 1 his
frœndum ond mid his wytum gesprec ond geþeahæt habban, paet
gif hi mid hine þæt geþæfnian woldan, þæt hi ealle sætome ne on liðes
willan Christ gehalgcæd wæran. Pa dyde se cyning swæ swæ he
cwæð, ond se biseop þæt geþæfaðe. Ða hæsde he gesprec ond
geþæht mid his witum, ond syndriglice was fram him eallum
frignende, hwyle he þúhte ond gesawen ware þæos niwe lær ond
þære godecundnesse bigong þe þær læred was.

Him pa ondsvarode his ealdorisceop, Cefi was hæten: 30
"Geseoh þu, cyning, hwelc þeos lær sæ, þe ðu nu bodad is. Ic þe
sððlice andette, þæt ic cûðlice geleornad haebbe, þæt callinga
nawiht megene ond nyttnesse haðaþ sio æfæstnes þe wæ oð þis
hæfdon ond þeoddon. Forðon næning þinra þegna neððlicor ne
gelustfulloric hine underþædde to Þra goda bigange þonne ic;
ond nóht þon læs monige syndon þa þe mæran gesf ond fremsum-
nesse sæt þe onfengo þonne ic, ond on allum þingum mæran
gesynpto hæfdon. Hwæt ic wæt, gif ðære godo ænige mihte hæfdon,
þonne woldan hie mæ mæ fulumian, forþon ic him geornlicor
þæódde ond hýrde. Forþon mæ þynces wisco, gif þu gesæo 40
þa ðing beteran ond strangran, þe ðu niwan bodad syndon, þæt
we þæm onfôn."

Þæs wordum ðær cyninges wita ond ealdormann geþæfunge
sealde, ond tó þære spræce fæng ond þus cwæð: "Þylic mæ is
geswæn, þu cyning, þis andwearde lið manna on eorðan to wið-
metenesse þære tíde þe ðús uncúð is, swæ 2 lic swæ þu ðæt swæsendum
sitte mid þinum ealdormannum ond þegnum on wintertíde, ond
þæf onðælað ond þin heall gewyrmed, ond hit rine ond swæ

1 C omits mid; supplied from Ca.
2 C omits last letter of swa; Ca, swa gelic.
ond styrme ðate; cume ðan spearwa and hrædlcice þæt hús ðurhflæo,
cume þurh ðøre duru in, þurh ðøre ðat gewite. Hwaet hæ on ʒo
þa tid þære hine ðið, ne ðið hrinen 1 mid þy storme ðæs wintres;
ac þæt ðið ðæn ðægen bryhtm ond þæt læsste fæc, ac hæ sōna of
wintra on þone winter eft cymeð. Swā þonne þis monna līf tō
medniclum fæce ætȳweð; hwaet þær foregange, ðeðe hwaet þær
eftfylge, wē ne cunnun. Forþon gið þeos niwe lār ðwiht cūðlicere
ond gerisenlicere brenge, þæs weorþe is þæt wē þære fylgen.”
Dæossum wordum gelicium ðiðre aldormen ond ðæs cyninges
geþæhteras spræcan.
þæg gēn tōæþhtē Čæfi, ond cwæþ, þæt hæ wolde Paulinus þone
bisceop geornlicor gehýran be þam Gode sprecende þam þe ʒo
hæ bodade. þæ hēt sē cyning swā dōn. þæ hē þa his word ge-
hyrðe, þæ clypode hē ond þus cwæþ: “Geare ic þet ongeat þæt þæt
nōwiht wæs þæt wē beōdan; forþon swā miċe swā ic geornlicor on
þam bigange þæt sylfe sōð sōhte, swā ic hit læs mëtte. Nū þonne
ic openlice ondette, þæt on þyssæ lære þæt sylfe sōð scineð þæt ðus
mæg þæ gyfe syllan ðære ðadignese ond ðæs līfes hēlo. Forþon
ic þonne nū lære, cyning, þæt þæt templ ond þæ wīgbede, þæ þe wē
būtan wēstemum ānigre nyttnesse hālgedon, þæt wē þæ hraþe
forlōcesen ond fyrre forbærnen.” Ono hwæt, hē ðā, sē cyning,
openlice ondette þam bysceope ond him eallum, þæt hē wolde 70
fæstlice þam dēofulgyldum wiðsacan ond Cristes gelēafan onfōn.
Mid ʒy þe hē þā, sē cyning, fram þam forespecenan bisceope
sōhte ond ācsade héora hālínesse þe hī ār beōdan, hwā þā wīgbed
ond þā heargas þāra dēofolgylda mid héora hegum þe hī ymbsette
wǣron, hī ārest āðlian ond tōweorpan sceolde, þā ondswarade
hē; “Efne ic. Hwā mæg þā nū ðē 2 ic længe mid dysinesse beōde,
tō bīsene ðhra mana gerisenlicor tōweorpan, þonne ic sylfa þurh

1 C, hrined, with h above line; Ca, rined.
2 C, as before ðe blurred, as if partly erased.
pa snyttro þe ic fram þam söþan Gode onfæng?" Ond hē þa söþa fræm hīm æweorp þa idlan dysinesse, þe hē ær beōode, ond þone cyning bæd þæt hē him wæpen sealde ond stōdhors, þæt hē sc mihte on cuman ond þæt dæofolgyld tōweorpan. Forþon þám bisceope hiora hālīgenesse ne wæs ālyfēd þæt hē mōstæ wæpen wegan ne æcor būtan on myrān ridan. þæ sealde sæ cyning him sweord, þæt hē hine mid begyrde, ond nam him spere on hand ond hlēop on þæs cyninges stēdan, ond tō þæm dæofolgyldum fērde. þæt folc hīne þa gesæah swā gescyrdpedne þa wēndon hī þæt hē tela ne wiste, ac þæt hē wēdde. Sōna þæs þe hē gelyhte tō þæm hearge, þæ scēat hē mid his spere þæt hit sticade fæste on þæm hearge, ond wæs swīpe gefēondæ þære ongytenses þæs söþan Godes biganges. Ond hē þa hēt his gefēran tōweorpan 1 eallæ þone hearh ond 90 þæ getimbro, ond forbārnan. Is sēo stōw gīt ātūwed giū sāra dæofolgylda nōht fēor ēast fræm Eoforwīcceaestre begeondan Deor-wætan þære ēa, ond gēn tō dāge is nemned Godmundingahām, þær sē bisceope þurh þæs söþan Godes onbryrdnesse tōwearp ond fordīde þa wīgbed þe hē sylf ær gehālgode.

Dā onfēng Ēadwine cyning mid eallum þam æþelingum hīþ þēode ond mid mīcle folcē Cristes geleafan ond fulwīhte bēē þy endlysēn gēare his rīces. Wās hē gefullad fræm Pauline þam bisceope hīs lārēowe on Eoforwīcceaestre þy hālgestan Ēasterdāge on See. Pētres cyrcan þæs apostoles, þa hē þær hrǣde 100 geweorcē of trōwe cyricean getimbrēde. Syððan hē gecristnad wæs, swylce hē ēac on þære cestre hīs lārēwe and his biscope Pauline bisceopsetl forgeaf. Ond sōna þæs þe hē gefulwad wės, hē ongan mid þæs bisceopes lāre māran cyricean ond hīyrren stānēne timbran ond wyrcean ymþ þæ cyricean ūtan þe hē ær worhtē. Ac Ær þon þe sēo hēannes þæs wealles gefylled and geendad wēre, þæt hē sē cyning mid ārīēsre cwale ofslegen wēs, ond þæt ilce geweorc hīs

1 C, tōworpan; T, tōweorpan; Ca, tōworpon.
æfterfylgende Oswalde forlêt to geendianne. Of þære tide Paulinu
sé biseop syx greet full, þat is ðe ende þæs cyninges rices, þat
hè mid his fultume on þære mægðe Godes word bodade ond 110
lærde; ond men gelyfdon ond gefulwade wæron, swā monige swā
foretœode wæron tō œcum life.

VI. STORY OF CÆDMON

Book IV, Chapter 24

On þyse abbudissan mynstre wæs sum bróðor synderlice mid
godcundre gyfe gemœred ond geweorðad, forþon hè gewunade
gerisenlice lèðær wyrcean, þæt þe to æfestnesse ond tō ærfaestnesse
belumpon; swā ðætte swā hwæt swā hè of godcundum stafum
þurh bócera gedœormode, þæt hë æfter medmiclum fæce in scop-
gereorde mid þæ mæstan swëtnesse ond inbryndnesse geglencde,
ond in Engliscgereorde wel geworht 1 forð bröhte. Ond for his
læðsongum monigra monna mód oft tō worolde forhohnesse ond
tō geþëodnesse þæs heofonlican lifes onbærnde wæron. Ond ðæc
swylce monige ðötre æfter him on Ongelbêode ongunnon æfæste 10
lèðær wyrcean, ac nānig hwæþere him þæt gelice dôn meahte. For-
þon hē nälse from monnum ne þurh mon gelœred wæs þæt hê þone
læðærþæt gedœormode, ac hè was godecundlice gefultumod, ond
þurh Godes gyfe þone songærft onfêng. Ond hē forþon næfre
nöht lëasunge, ne ñilæis lëopes wyrcean meahte ac ñe þe þæ
ã æfestnesse belumpon, ond his þæ æfestan tungan gedæfenode
singan.

Wæs hē, sæ mon, in weoruldhāde geseted oð ða tide þe hē was
gelyfedre ylde, ond hē næfre sænig lèðær gedœormode. Ond hē forþon
oft in gehærœscipe, þonne þær wæs blisse intings gedœmed, 20
þæt hī ealle sceolden þurh endebyrdnesse be hearpan singan, þonne
1 C, Ca, gehweer; T, geworht.
he geseah þa hearpan him nealæcan, þonne āræs þe forscome from þæm symble, ond hâm ðode tō his hûse. þa he þæt þa sumre tide dyde, þæt he forlēt þæt 1 hûs þæs gebœorscipes, ond út was gongende tō næta scypene, þæra heord him wæs þære neihte beðoden; þæ sceal þær in gelimplice tide his limo on reste gesette ond onslæpte, þa stód him sum mon æt þurh swefn, ond hine hælette ond grētte, ond hine be his naman nemde: “Cedmon, sing mē hwæthwugu.” 2 Ða ondswarode hē, ond cwæð: “Ne con ic nōht singan, ond ic forþon of þyssum gebœorscipe út ðode 30 ond hider gewāt, forþon ic nōht cūce.” Eft hē cwæð, scē þe mid him spрядec wæs: “Hwæcere þū meaht mē singan.” Cwæð hē: “Hwæt sceal ic singan?” Cwæð hē: “Sing mē frumsceæft.” þæ hē þa þæs andswære onfēng, ða ongan hē sōna singan, in herenesse Godes Scyppendes, þa fers ond þa word þe hē næfre ne gebyrde, þæra endebyrdnes ðēs is:

Nū wē sculan herian heofonricæs Weard,
Metodes mihte ond his mōdgeþone,
weore 1 Wuldorþæder, swā hē wundra gehwæs,
ēce Drihten ord  4 onstéalde.

Hē ærest gescēop eordan bearnum
heofon tō hrōfe, hālig Scyppend;
ðā middongeard moneynnes Weard,
ēce Dryhten, æfter tēode
frum foldan, Frēa aelmīhtig.

Ðā ārūs hē from þæm slāpe, ond eall þa þe hē slāpende song, fæste in gemynde hæfre; ond þæm wordum sōna monig word in þæt ylce gemet Godes wyrþes songes tôgeþōdodde. þā cōm hē on morgenne 5 tō þæm tūngerēfan, sē þe his ealdormon wæs, sæde him

1 C, Ca, þa; T, þæt. 1 C, Ca, æθwegu; T, hwæθwugu.
2 C, Ca, wre; T, weorc. 4 C, oord; Ca, ord; T, or.
3 C, marne; Ca, margene; T, morgenne.
hwylce gyfe hē ofēng, ond hē hine sōna tō ðære abbudyssan &
gelædde, ond hire ðæt cīðde ond sæge. Ī hē hēof gesomnian
ealle ðā gēlærdestan men ond ðā læröræs, ond him ondweardum,
hēt sægan ðæt swēfn ond ðæt lēòð singan, ðætte eallra hēora dōmge
coren wāre, hwæt oððe hwonon ðæt cumen wāre. Ī wæs him
eallum gesegen, swā swā hīt wās, ðæt hīm wāre from Dryhtne
sylfum heofonlic gyfo forgýfen. Ī rehton hīm ond sægdon
sum hālig spel ond godecundre lære word; bebudon him ðā, gif hē
mihte; ðæt hē hīm sum sunge and in 1 swīnsunge 1 lēòðsonges ðæt
gehwyrfe. Ī hē ðā hæfsde ðā wísan onfangene, ðā gode hē hām
tō his hūse, ond cōm eft on morgen, ond ðū betstan lēòð 60
geglenged, him āsong ond āgeaf ðæt hīm beboden wās.

Ī ōngān sōo abbudyssse clyppan ond lufian ðā Godes gyfe in
ðēm mēn, ond hēo hine ðā monode ond lērde ðæt hē wēoroldhād
forlēte ond munuchāde onfēngē. Ond hē ðæt wel ðafode. Ond
hēo hine in ðæt mynster onfēng mid hīs gōdum, ond hīne gēbōdde
tō gesomnunga ðāra Godes þēowa, ond ī hēt hīne lēræn ðæt getæl
þēs hālgan stāres ond spelles. Ond hē eall ðā hē in gehērnesse
gleornian mihte, mid hīne gemyngeade, ond swā swā clāne nēten
eodorcende, in ðæt swēteste lēòð gehwyrfe. Ond hīs song ond
hīs lēòð wāron swā wynsum tō gehỳrenne, ðēt ðā sylfan hīs 70
lārēowas æt hīs mūðe writon ond leornodon.

Sōng hē ðērest be middangeardes geseape, ond be frūman mon-
cynnes, ond eal ðæt stēr Genesis, ðæt is sōo ðērest Moises bōc;
ond eft be ūtgonge Israēla folces of Egypta londē, ond be ingōnge
þēs gehātlondes, ond be ðōrūm monigum spellum þēs hālgan
gewrites canones 3 bōcā; ond be Cristes menniscnesse, ond be hīs
ðrōwunge, ond be hīs ðūpastigesse 3 in heofonas; ond bī þēs Hālgan

1 C, Ca omit these words; they are in T, which, however, omits him sum sunge
and, the words immediately preceding.
2 C omits second n but leaves space for û; Ca, canoses; T, canones.
3 C, upasagnesse: Ca, uppastignesse; T, upastignesse.
Gæstes cyrne, ond þāra apostola lāre; ond eft bi þām ege þæs tōweardan dōmes, ond be fyrgto þæs tintreglican wites, ond be swētnesse þæs heofonlican rīces, hē monig lēɔp geweorhte; 80 ond swylce $password1  $  $  $eac ħ̄er monig be þām godecundum fremsunnessum ond dōnum hē geworhte. On eallum þām hē geornlice gyrmde þæt hē men ātuge fram synna lufan ond māndācā, ond tō lufan ond tō geornfullnesse āwehte gōdra dāda. Forþon hē wās, sē mon, swīcē āfēst ond regollicum þōdecypum ēaðmōdlīcē underþēoded; ond wið ōām þā سة on ōψre wisan dōn woldon, hē wās mid wylme micelre ellenwōdnesse onberned. Ond hē forþon fægere ende his lif betynende ond geendade.

Forþon þā þāre tīde nēalēcte his gewitenesse ond forðīfōrē, þā wās hē fēowertýne dagum ēr, þæt hē wās licumlicī euntrum- nesse þrycceed ond hefigad, hwaþērē þōn gemetlicē þæt hē ealle þā tid mihte ge sprecan ge gagan. Wās þær on nēaweste un-trumra mana hūs, on þām hūra þēaw wās þæt hī þā untruman ond þā þē sēt forðīfōrē wārōn, in lēdan sceoldan, ond hīm þēr ætsonne þēnian. Þā bæd hē his þēn on ætenne þāre nihte þē hē ofworulde gangende wās, þæt hē on þām hūse him stōwe geggwar-wade, þæt hē restān mihte. Þā wundrāde sē þēng for hwōn hē þāes hēde, forþon him þūhte þæt his forðīfōrē swā nēh ne wēere; dyde hwaþērē swā swā hē cwǣd ond bebēad. Ond mid þī hē þā þēr on reste ëode, ond hē gefōonde moðe sumu þing ætgēedere 80 mid him sprecende ond gleowiede wās þē þār ēr inne wāron, þā wās ofer middeniht þæt hē frēgn, hwaþēr hī ënig hūsl þēr inne hēfdon. Þā ondswardon hīt ond cwǣdōn: “Hwilc þēarf is þē hūsles? Ne þīnre forðīfōrē swā nēh is, nū þū þus rōtílice ond þus glǣdlice tō ùs sprecende eart.” Cwǣd hē eft: “Berað mē hwaþērē hūsl tō.” Þā hē hit þā on handa hēfd, þā frang hē, hwaþēr hī ealle smyhte môd ond būtan eallum incan bliðe tō hīm hēfdon. Þā ondswardon hī ealle ond cwǣdōn þæt hī nānige incan tō hīm
wistan, ac hi ealle him swīðe blīðemōde wērōn; ond hi wrixtendlice hine bādon þæt hē him eallum blīðe wērē. Þā ondswarode 110 hē ond cwæð: “Mine brōðro, þā leofan, ic eom swīðe blīðmōd tō ēow ond tō eallum Godes monnum.” Ond hē swā wæs hine getrymmende mid þēo heofonlican wegneste, ond him ōþres lifes ingang gegeawade. Ðā gyt hē frēgnum, hū nēh þære tide wērē þætte þā brōðor ārisan sceoldon ond Godes lōf rāran,1 ond heora ūhtsang singan. Ondwearodon hī: “Nis hit feor tō þon.” Cwæð hē: “Tela, utan wē wel þære tide bīdan”; ond þā him gebōd, ond hine gesēnade mid Cristes rōdetācne, ond his hēafod onhylde tō þām bolstre, ond medmycel fēc onslēpē, ond swā mid stilnesse his lif geendade. 120

Ond swā wæs geworden þætte swā swā hē hlūtre mōde ond bylwite ond smylite willsumnesse Dryhtne bēowde, þæt hē eac swylce swā smylte dēaðe middangeard wēs forlātende, ond tō his gesyhte bēcōm. Ond sēo tunge þe swā monig hālwende word on þēas Scyppendes lōf gesette, hē þā swylce eac þā ðetemastan word on his herenesse, hine sylfe sēniende ond his gāst in 2 his honda bebēdende, betýnde. Eac swylce þæt is gesegen þæt hē wāre gewis his sylfe forfōre of þām þe wē nū secgan hýrōn.

1 C, Ca, folc læran; T, lōf rāran.
2 C, Ca, ond; T, in.
3 C, Ca, gesegd; T, gesegen.
VI

KING ALFRED'S VERSION OF THE
DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE
OF BOETHIUS

Boethius has been called "the last of the Romans"; he was considered by his contemporaries the most learned man of his time. Born about A.D. 480 of a very distinguished and wealthy old Roman family, he made for himself a career of great importance as a statesman in the Roman Empire under Theodoric, the Ostrogoth, a career which culminated in his elevation to the Headship of the Senate, the highest position a Roman citizen could hold. In his efforts to check corruption in the government Boethius necessarily made many enemies, who were, however, unable to injure him as long as he held the favor of the Emperor. When this favor finally was lost, Boethius was accused of conspiracy against Theodoric, and in spite of his eloquent defense of himself, was condemned by the Senate to imprisonment at Ticinum, an imprisonment which, prolonged, ended in his torture and death in 524. While in prison he wrote his De Consolatione Philosophiae, a treatise based principally on the philosophy of Aristotle and the Neo-Platonists. There is nothing definitely Christian in the De Consolatione, and many modern scholars think Boethius was not a Christian and was not the author of the theological treatises ascribed to him, but the mediaeval Church believed that he had suffered martyrdom for the cause of orthodoxy — Theodoric, his persecutor, having been an adherent of the Arian heresy — and canonized him as St. Severinus.

The Consolation of Philosophy had a tremendous influence on the thought of the Middle Ages. Its popularity is evidenced by hundreds of extant manuscripts and by numerous translations in
the various vernaculars. Of these the first in point of time was made by King Alfred, whose two most famous successors among English translators of the work were Chaucer and Queen Elizabeth.

The form of the *De Consolatione* is that of a dialogue between the author and Philosophy, who comes to comfort him in prison. It is mainly in prose, but throughout the work occur passages in verse known as *carmina* or *metra*. King Alfred translated both prose and verse into Anglo-Saxon prose, omitting what he thought would be difficult for his people to understand and adding many comments by way of explanation. A later version exists in which the *metra* are rendered into Anglo-Saxon alliterative verse. Despite the statement in Alfred's Preface that he made both translations, his authorship of the later version has been questioned.

Two manuscripts of the Anglo-Saxon version of *De Consolatione Philosophiae* are extant. The older of the two, Cotton Otho A VI in the British Museum, dating from the tenth century, containing the metrical version of the *carmina*, was injured in the fire which destroyed so many of the Cotton manuscripts in 1731. The other manuscript, belonging to the twelfth century, is in the Bodleian Library (No. 180), and is in perfect condition. Though a later manuscript, it represents the earlier all-prose version. A small fragment of a third manuscript also exists, which was discovered, 1886, in the Bodleian Library, by Professor A. S. Napier. The Dutch scholar, Francis Du Jon (1589–1677) better known as Francis Junius, made a transcript of the Bodleian MS. 180 and in its margins wrote many of the readings from the Cotton MS. This transcript and a copy which Junius also made of the Cotton *metra* are in the Bodleian Library.

The following selections from Boethius, *The Parable of the Sun and the Clouds*, *The Golden Age*, and *The Equality of Mankind*, are Alfred's original prose versions of three of the Latin *metra*
They are taken from the Bodleian MS. 180, the only manuscript in which they appear. W. J. Sedgefield’s text, *King Alfred’s Old English Version of Boethius De Consolatione Philosophiae*, Oxford, 1899, has been consulted.

I. PARABLE OF THE SUN AND THE CLOUDS

*Chapter 6*

Lōca nū le þære sunnan ond ēac be ðīrum tunglum; þonne sweartan wolcnu him beforan gāð ne mahon hī þonne heora lēoht sellan. Swā ēac sē sūðerna wind hwilum mid miclum storme gedrēfed þā sē þe ēr wæs smylte wedere glæslutrū on tō sēonne. Þonne hēo þonne swā gemenged wyrð mid cān yhlum, þonne wyrð hēo swīðe hraðe ungladu, þēah hēo ēr gladu wǣre on tō lōcienne. Hwæt, ēac sē brōc, þēah hē swīðe 1 of his rihtryne, þonne þær micel stān wealwiende of þām hēohan munte oninnan fealð ond hine tōdēlī ond him his rihtrynes wīstent. Swā dōð nū ēa þēostro þīnre gedrēfednesse wīðstandan mīnum lēohtum lārum. Ac gif 10 ēa wilnige on rihtum gelēasan þat sōðe lēoht oncnāwan, sīfyr fram þē ðā yfelan sēlpha ond þā unnettan, ond ēac ðā unnettan ungesēlpha ond þone yflian ege þisse worulde, þat is þat þū þē ne anhebbe on ofermētto on þīnre gesundfulnesse ond on ūnīre orsorgnesse, ne eft þē ne geortrywe nānes gōdes on nānre wīderweardnesse. Forðām þēt mōd siemle bið gebunden mid gedrēfednesse, þær þissa twēga yfela āuðer 2 rīcsāð.

II. THE GOLDEN AGE

*Chapter 15*

Þā sēo Gescéadwīnes þā ðīs spell āsēd hēafde, þā ongan hēo singan ond þus cwǣð: Ėalā, hū gesālīg sēo forme eld wās þīsē

1 MS. swripe; em. by Sedgefield.
2 MS. auðes; em. by Sedgefield.
midangeardes, hā alcum men þūhte genōg on þāre eorþan wast-
mum. Nērōn þā welige hāmas, ne mistlice svōtmettas, ne drincas, 
ne dōrwyrtōra hrǣgla hī ne gīrndan, forþām hī þā gīt nārān, ne hīo 
nānwuht ne gēsāwen, ne ne gēbērdon. Ne gēmdon hīe nānes 
fyrenlustes, būton swītē gemetlice þā gecynd beōdan; ealne weg 
hī ēton ēne on dǣg, ond þāt was tō æfennes. Trēowa wastmas hī 
ēton ond wyrta, nalles scīr wīn hī ne druncan, ne nānne wētān hī 
ne cūþon wiþ hunige mengan; ne seolocenra hrǣgla mid to 
mistlicum blōwum hī ne gēmdon. Ealne weg hī slepōn ūte on 
trīowa sceadum; hlūtērā wella wǣter hī druncon. Ne geseah nān 
çēpa ēaland ne weroð, ne gēhērde non mon þā gēt nānne sciphēre, 
ne furþōn ymbe nān gesēoht sprecan. Ne sēo eorþē þā gēt besmiten 
mid ofslēgenes monnes blōde, ne mon furþūm gewundod; ne monn 
ne geseah þā gīt yfelwillende men; nānne weorðscipe nǣftōn, ne hī 
non mon ne luふfe. Ėalā þāt ūre tīdā nū ne mihtān weorþan 
swīlice. Ac nū manna gitsung is swā byrnende swā þāt fyr on 
þāre helle, sēo is on þām munte þē Ėtne hāttē, on þām tēglanda 
þē Sicilia hāttē; sē munt biþ simle swēfel birnende, ond ealla 20 
þā nēahstōwa þārymbūtan forbaernō. Ėalā, hwēt sē forma 
gitsēre wāre, þē ārest þā eorþan ongān delfān æftēr golde, ond 
eftēr gīmmum, ond þā frēcnan dōrwyrtōnesse 1 fundē þē ār behýd 
wēs ond behelod mid ðāre eorþan.

III. THE EQUALITY OF MANKIND

Chapter 30, Part 2

þā sē Wīsdōm þā ðīs spell æreht hēfde, þā ongān hē singān ymbe 
þāt ilce 2 ond cwanō: Hwēt, ealle men hēfdon geltēne fruman, 
forþām hī ealle cōman of ānum fǣder ond of ānre mēder, ond ealle 
hī bēoð gīt gelice æcennede. Nīs þāt nān wundor, forþām þē ān

1 MS. deorwyrtōnesse; em. by Sedgefield.
2 MS. ilce above the line; em. by Sedgefield.
God is father of all things for he made all things in the world. He made all things in their proper order, and all things in their order. He made men in the image of his likeness, and all men are made capable of being free. How could men who have inherited so many wonderful things? All things are made capable of being free, if they will, and some will it. If they will, they shall receive salvation. And all things shall be made under his rule and his free will, and good shall be eternal. 
One of the most important books translated by King Alfred into Old English was Orosius's Historiarum libri vii adversus paganos. Orosius, a native of Spain, wrote this work (ca. 418) at the suggestion of St. Augustine, to defend Christianity against the pagan contention that it was responsible for the decline of the Roman Empire. As history the book was inaccurate but its popularity in the Middle Ages was widespread.

King Alfred's translation, free and not always correct, has some omissions and some interpolations. Among the latter, in the first chapter of Book I, is an account of the Scandinavian Peninsula and of what is now the coast of northern Germany given to the king orally by Ohthere and Wulfstan. Ohthere, a Scandinavian, who said that he lived "northernmost of all Northmen," told Alfred about his own country and about two voyages, one of which took him around the North Cape and then east and south to the White Sea, the other of which followed a southerly route along the coast of Norway and Sweden to Denmark. Wulfstan, who may have been a Scandinavian, a Dane, or possibly an Englishman, told of his voyage from Denmark along the southern shore of the Baltic Sea. This passage is interesting not only for its content but as an example of Alfred's use of original material.

There are only two extant manuscripts of the Old English translation of Orosius's History: the Lauderdale MS. of the ninth century, now in the library of Helmingham Hall, Suffolk; and the Cotton MS. Tiberius B I of the eleventh century, in the British Museum. The former of these is defective, among the missing parts being the chief portion of the "Voyages." The present text
is therefore from the Cotton MS. Henry Sweet edited Alfred's entire translation of Orosius in 1883 for the Early English Text Society, giving the Old English and the Latin texts and basing his edition on both manuscripts. In the preparation of the following text, Sweet's edition has been consulted.

VOYAGES OF OHTHERE AND WULFSTAN

Ôthhere sæde his hlaforde, Ælfrede kyninge, þæt hē ealra Norðmanna norðmest būde. Hē cwæð þæt hē būde on þēm lande norðeweadum wiþ þā Westsē. Hē sæde þēah þæt þæt land sy swýðe lang norþ ðanon; ac hit is eal wēste, būton on fǣwum stōwum stīccemǣrum wiċiaþ Finnas, on huntaþe on wintra, and on sumera on fīscenōc be þære sē. Hē sæde þæt hē æt sumum cyrrre wolde fandian hū lange þæt land norþryhte lāge, ofþe hwæþer ānig man be norþan þēm wēstene būde. Þā fōr hē norþrihte be þēm lande; lēt him ealne weg þæt wēste land on ðæt stōrbord, and þā wīsdē on bǣcbord þrý dagas. Þā wæs hē swā fēr norþ swā þā 10 hwǣlbhuntan fyrrest fairþ. Þā fōr hē þā gyt norþryhte swā fēr 1 swā hē mihte on þēm ðūrum þrīm dagum geseglian. Þā bēah þæt land þær āstryhte, ofþe sīo sē in on ðæt lond, hē nyste hwæþer, būton hē wiste ðæt hē þær ābād westanwīndes ofþe hwōn norþan, and sægled þæn ðanon ēast be lande swā swā hē mihte on fēower dagum geseglian. Þā sæcold hē abidan ryhtē norðanwīndes, forðan þæt land þær bēah sūþrīhte, ofþe sīo sē in on ðæt land, hē nyste hwæþer. Þā sægled hē þanon sūþrīhte be lande swā swā hē mihte on fīf dagum geseglian. Þā læg þær ān mycel ēa āp in on þæt land. Þā cyrdon hū āp in on ēa ēa, for þēm hū ne dorston forþ be 20 þære ēa sæglian for unfriþe; forðēm þæt land wæs eall gēbūn on ðōþe healþ þære ēa. Ne mētte hē ār nān gēbūn land, sūþōn hē

1 MS. ommits swa fēr; supplied from Sweet's reading of the Lauderdale MS.
from his āgnum hāme fōr; ac him wæs ealne weg weste land on þat stēororbord, būtan fisceran and fugeleran and huntan, and þat wæran ealle Finnas; and him wæs a wīdsē on þat bæcbord. ðā Beormas hæfðon swīþe wel gebūn hyra land; ac hī ne dorston þær on euman. Ac ðāra Terfinna land wæs eal wēste, būtan þær huntan gewīcodon, oððe fisceras, oððe fugeleras.

Fela spella him sædon þā Beormas ægþer ge of hiera āgnum lande ge of þæm landum þe ymb hī ðūtan wæran; ac hī nyste 30 hwæt þæs sōþes wæs, for þæm hī hit sylf ne gesēah. ðā Finnas, him þōhte, and þā Beormas sprācon nēah ān geþēode. Swĭpost hī fōr ðyder, tōcācan þæs landes scēawunge, for þæm horshwælum, for þæm hī habbað swĭþe æþele bān on hyra tōþum — þā tēð hī b𝗿óhtoŋ s✉mε þæm cynincge — and hyra hýd bīð swŏþe gŏd tŏ scĭrprăpum. Sē hwael bīð mĭcĭi lēssé þonne oððe hwala;& ne bīð hī lēŋra ῧonne syfan eļnæa læŋa. Ac on his āgnum lande is sē betasta hwǣlhunte; þā bĕōa eahtæa and fŏcwertas eļnæa længe, and þā mǣstan, fĭstĭges eļnæa læŋe. ðāra hī sæde þæt hī syxa sum ofsĕlŏge syxtĭg on twĭm dɑguμ. 40

Hī wæs swĭþe spēdíg man on þæm æhtum þe heora spēda on bĕō;
þæt is, on wĭldeŏrum. Hī hæfde þā gýt, þā hī þone cyninge sŏhtæ, tamra dŏra unĕbobhra syx hund. ðā dŏr hī hātæ “hrānas”; ðāra wǣrôŋ syx stēlhrānas; þā bĕōa swĭþe dyrē mĭd Fĭnnum, for þæm hī fōt þā wĭldan hrānas mīd. Hī wæs mĭd þæm fyrstum munnun on þæm lande. Nǣfe hī þĕah mă þonne twĕntĭg hrŏĭtĕra, and twĕntĭg scĕapa, and twĕntĭg swŏyṇa; and þæt lĭtŏle þæt hī eredē, hī eredē mĭd hŏrson. Ac hyra ār is mĕst on þæm gafŏle þe þā Fĭnnas hīm gyldađ. þæt gafol bīd on dŏrŏa fellum, and on fugela fĕŏrum, and hwǣles bāne, and on þæm scĭrpră- 50 pŭm, þe bĕōa of hwǣles hĭye geworht, and of sŏleŏs. Aŭghwĭlce gylt be hys gebyrdum. Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fĭsertēn mearĭes fell, and sī hrānes, and sī beran fel, and tĕn ambra feŏra, and
berenne kyrtel ofte yterenne, and twegen sciprapas; ægber sy
syxtig elna lang, öper sy of hwæles hyde geworht, öper of stoles.

Hē sāde þæt Norðmanna land wære swýþe lang and swýþe
smæl. Eal þæt his man öder öðre ettan öðre erian mæg, þæt líð
wið ðá sæ; and þæt is þéah on sumum stówum swýþe cludig; and
liçgā wilde mōras wið cæstan and wið upp on emnlange þēm
býnum lande. On þēm mōrum eardiað Finnas. And þæt æc
býne land is ëasteweard brādost, and symle swā norðor swā
smære. Ëasteweard hit mæg biōn syxtig mɪla brād, opþe hwēne
brādre; and middeweard þrītig oðre brādre; and norðeweard hē
cwæð, þær hit smalost wære, þæt hit mihte bēon þröora mɪla brād
to þēm mōre; and sē mōr sỹþæn, on sumum stówum, swā brād
swā man mæg on twām wucum oferfēran; and on sumum stówum
swā brād swā man mæg on syx dagum oferfēran.

 Dönne is tōemnes þēm lande sūðeweardum, on ðōre healfe þēs
mōres, Swōland, òp þæt land norðeweard; and tōemnes þēm
lande norðeweardum, Æwena land. Þā Æwēnas her giað 7a
hwilum on þā Norðmen ofer ðōne mōr, hwilum þā Norðmen on
hỹ. And þær sint swīþe micle meras fersce geond þā mōras; and
berað þā Æwēnas hyra scypu ofer land on þā meras, and þān
her giað on þā Norðmen; hỹ habbað swýþe lýtłe scypa and swýþe
lechte.

Ohthere sāde þæt sio scir hātte Hālgoland, þe hē on būde. Hē
cwæð þæt nān man ne būde be norðan him. Dönne is ān port on
sūðeweardum þēm lande, þone 1 man hāt Sciringeshēal. Þyder
hē cwæð þæt man ne mihte geseglian on ānum mōnde, gyf man on
niht wicode, and ðēlice dāge hæfde ambyrne wind; and ealle _MSK
ðā hwile hē sceal seglian be lande. And on þæt stēorbord him bīc
sērest Íraland, and þonne ðā ĩngland þe synd betux Íralande and
þissum lande. Dönne is þis land, òh hē cym þō Sciringeshēale

1 MS. þonne; em. by Sweet.
and ealne weg on þæt bæcbord Norðweg. Wið suðan¹ þonne Sciringesheal fyld swywðe mycel sæ úp in on þæt land; seo is brādre þonne ænig man ofer seon mæge. And is Gotland on öðre healfa ongæn, and siðan² Sillende. Søo sæ lið lænig hund mila úp in on þæt land.

And of Sciringesheale hē cwæð þæt hē seglode on þif dagan tō þæm porte þe mon hæt at Hærnum; sæ stent betuh Winedum, 90 and Seaxum, and Angle, and hýrð in on Dene. Dā hē þiderweard seglode fram Sciringesheale, þā was him on þæt bæcbord Denemearc and on þæt stœrbord widsē þry dagas; and þā, twēgen dagas ær hē tō Hærnum cōme, him was on þæt stœrbord Gotland, and Sillende, and Íglanda fela. On þæm landum eardodon Englæ, ær hī hider on land cōman. And hym was ðā twēgen dagas on þæt bæcbord þā Íglænd þe in tō Denemearce hýrāð.

Wulfstan sæde þæt hē gefōre of Hærnum, þæt hē wære on Trūsō on syfan dagum and nihtum, þæt þæt scip was ealne weg yrnende under segle. Weonodland him was on stœrbord, and on 10 bæcbord him was Langaland, and Lałand, and Falster, and Scōnēg; and þās land eall hýrāð tō Denemearcan. And þonne Burgenda land was ðū on bæcbord, and þā habbað him sylfe ³ cyning. Þonne æfter Burgenda lande wær on þās land, þā synð hātene ærest Blæcinga-ēg, and Mæore, and Êowlænd, and Gotland on bæcbord; and þās land hýrāð tō Swēon. And Weonodland was ðū ealne weg on stœrbord ðē Wislemūðan. Sūo Wisle is swywðe mycel ðā, and hīo tōlīð Witland and Weonodland; and þæt Witland belimpeð tō Estum; and sæo Wisle līð út of Weonodlænde, and līð in Estmære; and sæ Estmere is hūrī fihtēne míla þrāð. Þonne 110

¹ MS. Nortwège bi (above line) wið suðan. Final e of Nortwège and bi added by later hand.
² MS. siða; em. by Sweet. ³ MS. sylf; em. by Sweet.
cyme Ilfing eastan in Estmere of þám mere, þe Trúsu stoode
in staðe; and uman ðit samod in Estmere, Ilfing eastan of East-
lande, and Wísle swíðan of Winodlande. And þonne benimð
Wísle Ilfing hire naman, and liged of þám mere west and norð on
sæ; for þý hit man sæt Wíslemúða.

Þat Eastland is swýðe mycel, and þær bið swýðe manig burh,
and on ælcere byrig bið eyninge. And þær bið swýðe mycel hunig,
and fiscenað; and sæ cyning and þa ricostan men drincæ myran
meolc, and þa umspéðigan and þa þéowan drincæ medo. þær bið
swýðe mycel gewinn betwéoonan him. And ne bið þær nánig 120
ealo gebrown mid Estum, ac þær bið medo genoh. And þær is
mid Estum ðéewa, þonne þær bið man dæad, þat hē lið inne unfor-
bærned mid his mágum and fréondum mónæð, ge hwilum twégen;
and þa kyningas, and þa óðre hæahungene men, swā micle leneg
swā hī máran spéda habbað, hwilum healf gær, þat hī boð un-
forbærned and liegðað bufan eorðan on hyra húsum. And ealle þa
hwile þat líc bið inne, þær sceal bēon gedrynce and plega, oð
þone dæg þe hī hine forbærnad. Þonne þy ylcan dæg þe 1 hī hine
to þám áðe beran wyllæð, þonne tóðælað hī his feoh, þat þær tō
láfe bið aefter þám gedrynce and þám plegan, on fif oðde 130
syx, hwylum on mā, swā swā þes féos andefn bið. Alecgað hit
ßonne forhwæga on ánre mile þone mæstan dæl fram þam tūne,
Þonne ðærne, ßonne þæne þriddan, oþ þe hyt eall álæd bið on þære
 ánre mile; and sceall beōn sē læsta dæl nýhst þam tūne sē sē dædas
man on lið. Þonne sceolon bēon gesamnode ealle ða menn sē
swyftostæ hors habbað on þam lande, forhwæga on fif mílum oðde
on syx mílum fram þam féo. Þonne ðærne hī yalle tōward þam
féo. Þonne cymeð sē man sē þat swyftostæ 2 hors hafað to þam
ærestan dæle and tō þam mæstan, and swā álæc æfter ðōrum, oþ
hit bið eall genumen; and sæ nimð þone læstan dæl sæ nýhst

1 MS. þe omitted, supplied by Sweet.  
2 MS. swyftæ; em. by Sweet.
hæm tūne hæst feoh geærneð. And þonne rīdendum ðele hys weges mid ðān feo, and hyt mōtan habban eall; and for ðī þær bēoð þā swīftan hōrs ungeohige dīrē. And þonne his gestrēon bēoð þus eall ēspended, þonne byrð man hine út, and forbærneð mid his wēpnum and hrægle; and swīðost ealle hys spēda hīf forspendað mid þān lāngan legere þēs dēadan mannes inne, and þēs þē hīf be hæm wegum ðelecgað, þē ðā fremdan tō ērnað, and nimað. And þæt is mid Estum þēaw þæt þār secel ðēlces geðēodes man bēon for-

bérned; and gyf þār man ēn bān findē unforbérned, hī hit secolan mīclum gebētan. And þār is mid Estum ēn māgēð þæt hī 150 magon cyle gewyrcað; and þī þār līcgað þā dēadan men swā lānge, and ne fūliað, þæt hī wyrcan þōne cyle him 1 on. And þēah man āSETTE TWEGEN SETELS FULL EALD ÓOEDE WÆTERES, HĪG gedūh þæt ægþer 1 bið oferfroren, sam hit sēy sumor sam wīnter.

1 MS. hine; em. by Sweet. 2 MS. oþer; em. by Sweet.
KING ALFRED'S PREFACE TO
POPE GREGORY'S PASTORAL CARE

What is generally conceded to be the first book translated by
King Alfred, in his desire to improve the minds of his people, was
the work of that great friend of the English, Pope Gregory, whose
story as narrated by Bede has already been given. Gregory's
book, known variously as Liber Regulae Pastoralis, De Cura Pasto-
rali, or Cura Pastoralis, dealt with the duties of bishops, and was
highly esteemed throughout the Middle Ages. Alfred's transla-
tion of it was prefaced by some original remarks on the disastrous
state into which learning had fallen in England when he came to
the throne, as contrasted with its flourishing condition in previous
times, and on his own desire to improve this condition. A copy of
the translation of the Pastoral Care and of Alfred's preface was to
be sent to each of his bishops. The manuscript from which the
following text is taken was the copy sent to Wærferð, bishop of
Worcester. His name appears in the first line of the manuscript,
and on the first page is written, "Deos boc sceal to Wiogora
Ceastre."

There are two manuscripts of the Old English text, both con-
temporary with Alfred, Hatton MS. 20, Bodleian Library, and
Cotton Tiberius B XI, British Museum, the latter in a badly mu-
tilated condition. Sweet used both manuscripts in his edition
made for the Early English Text Society (Vols. 45, 50). The fol-
lowing text of the Preface is that of the Hatton manuscript.
Sweet's text has been consulted.

Ælfréd kyning hætæ grētan Wærferð bisceop his wordum lulice
ond freondlice; ond ðē cyðan hāte ðæt mé cōm swiðe oft on gemynd,
hwelce wiotan ēr wēron giond Angelecynd, ægðer ge godecundra hāda
ALFRED'S PREFACE TO PASTORAL CARE 199

ge woruldecundra; ond hū gesǣliglicā tida þā wārōn giond Angel-cynn; ond hū ē lákyningas ǣc ðone onwald haefdon ǣes folces on ǣm dagum Gode ond his ðrendwrecum ᵀ maxHeightedon; ond hie ǣgðer ge hiora sibbe ge hiora siodo ge hiora onweald innanborde gehioldon, ond Óac ðt hiora ðēfel gerýmdon; ond hū him ðā spēow ǣgðer ge mid wīge ge mid wisdōmē; ond Óac ðā godecundan hādās hū giornē hīe wārōn ǣgðer ge ymb lārē ge ymb liornunga, ge 10 ymb ealle ðā ðiowotdōmas ðē hite Gode dōn sceoldon; ond hū man ðutanborde sǐswēm ond lārē hīedē on lond sōhte, ond hū wē hī nū sceoldon ðēt begiētan, gif wē hīe habban sceoldon. Swā clāне hīo wæs oðfeallenu on Angelcynne ðæt swīðē fǣawa wārōn behiōnan Humbre ðē hiora ðēninga cūðēn understōndan on Englisc ðiðe furðūm ēn ðrendgewrit of Lēdene on Englisc ēreceēan; ond ic wēne ðæt nōht monige begiōnan Humbre næren. Swā fǣawa hīora wārōn ðæt ic furðūm ēnne ānlēpēne ne mēg geðencean be sūðan Temēsē, ðā ðā ic tō riċe fēng. Gode ælmihtēgum śe ðōnc ðæt wē nū sēnine onstāl habbaē lārēowā. Ōnd for ðōn ic ðē bebiōde 20 ðæt ðū dō swā ic gelēfe ðæt ðū wille, ðæt ðū ðē ðissa wūruldfingā tō ðēm geārmetige, swē ðū oftost mēgē, ðæt ðū ðōne wisdōmē ðē ðē God sælde ðēr ðēr ðū hiene befēastan mēgē, bebēaste. Geðence hwelc 1 witu ûs ðā becōmōn for ðīsē worulde, ðā ðā wē hit nō-hwēðer ne sēlī ne lufodon ne ðēc ðīðrum monnum ne lēfdon; ðōne naman ēnne wē lufodon ðæt wē cristēn wēren, ond swīðē fǣawa ðā fǣawās.

Þā ic ðā ðīs eall gemunde, ðā gemunde ic ðac hū ic geseah, ēr ðēm ðē hīt eall forhērgod wāre ond forbēørned, hū ðā ciriceēn giond eall Angelcynn stōdon māðma ond bōca gefyldē, ond ðac 30 micel menigeo Godes ēowā; ond ðā swīðē lytē fiormē ðārā bōca wiston, for ðēm ðē hīe hīora nānwught ongiōtan on meahton, for ðēm ðē hī nārōn on hīora ēgen geōdē ðrīttēnē. Swēlce hīe

1 MS. hwelce
cwædon: “Ure yldran, þa þe þæs stōwa ær hioldon, hie lufodon wisdom, ond þurh ðone hie begēaton welan, ond ðus læfdon. Hēr mon mæg giet gesiæon hiora swæð, ac wē him ne cunnun æfter spy-rigeæan, ond for þæm wē habbað nú ægðer forlæten ge ðone welan ge ðone wisdom, for þæm þe wē noldon tō þæm spore mid ûre mōde onlūtan.”

Dā ic þa þís eall gemunde, þā wundrade ic swīðe swīðe þāra 40 ðoden wiotona þe giu wâron giud Angelcynn, ond þā bēc ealla be fullan geliornod hæfdon, ðæt hīe hiora þā nānne dēl noldon on hiora āgen geðiode wendan. Ac ic þā sōna eft mē selfum andwyrdæ, ond cwæð: “Hīe ne wēndon þætt æfre menn sceolden swā recelēæe weordan, ond sī lār swā swīðe oðfeallan; for þære wilnunga þy hit forlēton, ond woldon ðæt hīer þī māra wisdom on londe wēre þī wē mā geðiode cūdon.”

Dā gemunde ic hū sīo sī was ērest on Ebrēisc-geðiode funden, ond eft, þā hīe Greccas geliornodon, þā wendon hīe on hiora āgen geðiode ealle, ond ðæc mānige ðēre bēc. Ond eft 50 Lēdendvery swā same, sīðēan hīe hīe geliornodon, hīe hīe wendon ealla þurh wīse wealhstōdas on hiora āgen geðiode. Ond ðæc ealla ðēre cristne þioda sumne dēl hiora on hiora āgen geðiode wendon. For þī mē ðynē betre, gif lōw swā ðynē, ðæt wē ðæc sume bēc, þā þē niedbehēarfiosta sīen eallum monnum tō wiotonne, ðæt wē þā on ðæt geðiode wenden wē wē ealle gecnāwan mægen, ond gedōn, swā wē swīðe ēadē magon mid Godes fultume, gif wē þā stilnesse habbað, ðæt eall sī giogūð þē nū is on Angelcynnne frīora monna, þāra þē þā spēda hæbben ðæt hīe þēm befeolæan mægen, sīen tō liornunga oðfrēaste, þā hwīle þē hīe tō nānre ðēerre note 60 ne mægen, oð ðone first þē hīe wil cunnun Engliċ gewrit ārādan; lāre mon sīðēan furður on Lēdengediode þā þē mon furðor lāran wille, ond tō hieran hāde dōn wille.

1 MS. agene, e added by later hand.
ALFRED'S PREFACE TO PASTORAL CARE

Да ic 5a gemunde hű sëo lăr Lædengeðiodes ãr ãtissum ãfealle
wæs giond Angelcynn, ond tǣah monige cūðon Englisc gewrit
ārædan, ãa ongan ic ongemang ôðrum mislicum ond manigfealdum
biscum ðisses kynerces ãa bōc wendan on Englisc ãe is genemned
on Læden Pastoralis, ond on Englisc Hierdeboç, hwilum word be
worde, hwilum andgit of andgiete, swā swā ic hie geliornode ãt
Plegmunde minum ærcebiscepe, ond ãt Assere minum biscepe,
ond ãt Grimbolde minum mæsepröstost, ond ãt Iohanne minum
mæsepröstoste. Siððan ic hie ãa geliornod hæfde, swā swā ic hie
betst understandon cūðe, ond swā ic hie andgitfullicost æreccæan
meahte, ic hie on Englisc ðwende; ond tō ðēlcum biscepstōle on
minum rice wille āne onsendan; ond on ælcre bið ān ðæstel, sē bið
on fiftegum mancessa. 1 Ond ic bebiode on Godes naman ãet nān
mon ðone ðæstel from ðēre bēc ne dō, ne ãa bōc from ðēm mynstre;
uncūð hū longe ðēr swā gelærede biscepas sēn, swā swā nu, Gode
ðone, wel 2 hwēr siendon. For ðy ic wolde ãet hie ealneg ãt
ðēre stōwe wāren, bēton sē biscep hie mid him habban wille, ã
sē ðēh hīo hwēr to lāne sēc, ðōðe hwā ðōre bl write.

1 MS. mancessan, n added in later ink.
2 MS. ge added by later hand above line before wel.
ÆLFRIC'S HOMILIES

ÆLFRIC, who flourished about a century after Alfred, is the chief representative of the later period of Old English prose. Born 955 (?) he spent the greater part of his life in a Benedictine monastery at Winchester. In 1005 he was made abbot of another Benedictine monastery at Ensham, or Eynsham, where he lived until his death, presumably about 1020.

Ælfric was a good scholar and a prolific writer in both Latin and English. Among his most important works are two series of Homilies, forty in each series, to be used by the clergy on the various feast days of the church calendar; a series of Saints' Lives; an Anglo-Saxon-Latin Grammar; a Latin Colloquium, for which an interlinear Old English translation was later made by some unknown person; and a translation of part of the Heptateuch.¹

The first of the two Homilies given below is part of the Homily for January first on the "Octaves and Circumcision of Our Lord," and deals with some of the mediaeval beliefs about the beginning of the New Year. The second Homily, written for May third, tells the story of the Emperor Constantine, his mother Elena, and the Holy Cross.

There are many manuscripts of the Homilies, the best of which is in the Cambridge University Library, Gg. 3.28. This manuscript is the basis of the following text; with it were collated the Bodleian MS. 340, and, for the first Homily, Royal MS. 7 C XII, British Museum. The Homily on the Cross is not contained in the Royal MS. The only complete edition of the Homilies is that of Benjamin Thorpe, The Homilies of the Anglo-Saxon Church, The First

¹ Parts of the Colloquium and of the Heptateuch are given above, pp. 145 ff., 140 ff.
I. ÆLFRIC’S HOMILY ON NEW YEAR’S DAY

From the Homily on the Octaves and Circumcision of Our Lord

(December first)

We habbað oft gehyred þæt men hātað þysne dæg gēares dæg, swylice þēs dæg fyrmest sū on gēares ymbryne; ac wē ne gemētað nāne geswutelunge on cristenum bōcum, hwi þēs dæg tō gēares anginne geteald sū. Þā ealdan Rōmāni, on hēðenum dagum, ongūnnon þēs gēares ymbryne on ðysum dēge; and Þā Ebrēiscan lēoda on lenctenlicere emnīhte; Þā Grēcisca on sumerlicum sunstede; and Þā Egyptiscan ðēoda ongūnnon heora gēares getel on hērfeðe. Nū onginne ðūre gerim, æfter Rōmānisca gesetnysse, on ðysum dēge, for nānum godeundlicum gescēade, ac for ðām ealdan gewunan. Sume ðūre þēning-bēc onginneð on Adventum Domini; nis ðēah þær forðy ðēs gēares ord, ne ēac on ðisum dēge nis mid nānum gescēade; þēah ðē ðūre gerim-bēc on þissere stōwe gecdēcan. Rīhtlicost bīc gedēht þæt þēs gēares anginn on ðām dēge sū gehēafð, þe sē ælmīhtīga Scyppend sunnan, and mōnān, and steorrān, and ealra tīða anginn gescēade; þæt is on ðām dēge þæt Ebrēiscæ folc heora gēares getel onginneð; swā swā sē heretoga Moyses on ðām allicum bōcum swrīt. Witodlice God cwæð to Moyses be ðām mōnē, “Þēs mōnāð is mōnās anginn, and hē bīc fyrmest on gēares mōnūm.” Nū hēold þæt Ebrēiscæ folc ðōne forman gēares dæg on lenctenlicere emnīhte, forðan ðē on ðām dēge wurdon gēarlīcē tīða gescētte.

1 C, g above line between n and e.
Sæ eahteteða dag þæs mōnēs þe wē hātað Martius, ðone gē hātað Hýda, wæs sē forma dag ðyssere worulde. On þam dagæ worhte God lēoht, and merigen, and æfen. Ðā sōdon þryn dagas forð bōtun tida gemetum; forðan þe tungla ¹ nārōn gesceapene, er on þam fēorðan dagæ. On þām fēorðan dagæ gesette sē Ælmihhtiga ealle tungla and gēarlīc tida, and hēt þæt hī wārōn tō tācne dagum and gēarum. Nū ongynnnað þā Ebrēiscan heora gēares anginn on þām dagæ þe ealle tida gesette wārōn, þæt is on þām fēorðan dagæ woruldlicere gesceapenyss; and sē lārēow Bēda 30 telō mid micclum gescēade þæt sē dag is XII. KL. Aprilis, ðone dag wē frēolsiað þām hālgan ² were Benedicte ³ tō wurōmynte, for his micclum gedēneðum. Ḥwæt ēac sēo eorðe cūð mid hire cīðum, þe sōnne gedēcuciað, þæt sē tīma is þæt rihtlicoste gēares anginn, sē hī on gesceapene wārōn.

Nū wigliæð stunte men menigfealde wigelunga on ðisum dagæ, mid micclum gedwylde, æfter hāðenum gewunan, ongēan heora eristendōm, swylece hī magon heora lif gelengan, oþþe heora gesundfulynes; mid þām sē hī greminð bone almihtigan Scyppend. Sind ēac manegi mid swā micclum gedwylde befangene, þæt hī 40 cēpað be þām mōnan heora fār, and heora dāda be dagum, and nellāð heora cīng wanian on mōnan-dāg, for anginne cēre wucan; ac sē mōnan-dāg nīs nā fyrmest dāga on þāre wucan, ac is sē tīfer. Sē sunnan-dāg is fyrmest on gesceapenyss and on endebyrdnyss, and on wurōmynte. Seegað ēac sume gedwaṣmenn þæt sum orfcynn sē þe man blētsiġan ne secel, and cwēdāð þæt hī þurh blētsunge misfarað, and þurh wyrigunge gedēoð, and brūces þonne Godes gīfe hīm on tēōnan, bōtun blētsunge, mid dōfes āwyrgednyss. Æle blētsung is of Gode, and wyrigung of dōfse. God gescēop ealle gesceafta, and dōfes nāne gesceafta scyppan 55

¹ C, R, tunɡlan; B, tungla. ² C, B, halɡum; R, halɡan. ³ C, Benedick; B, R, Benedicte.
ne mag ac he is yfel tihtend, and las wyrcend, synna ordfruma, and sawla bepacend.

På gesceafa ðe sind þywyrlice geðūhte, hi sind to wrace gesceapene yfel-dædum. Oft hālige men wunodon on wēstene betwux reðum wulfum and lēonum, betwux eallum dēorcynne and wyrm-cynne, and him nān ðing derian ne mihte; ac hi tōtēron þa hyrne-dan nēddran mid heora nacedum handum, and þa micclan draca ðæfelice ðeawaldon, būton ðeere dare, þurh Godes mihte.

Wā ðām men þe bricð Godes gesceafa, būton hi blētsunge, mid dēofellicum wīglungum, þonne sē ðēoda lārēow cwǣð, 60 Paulus, "Swā hwæt swā gē dōð on worde, oððe on weorc, dōð symle on Drihtnes naman, þancigende þām ælmihtigan Fēder þurh his Bjarn." Nis þæs mannes cristendōm nāht, þe mid dēofelicum wīglungum his lif ādriht; he is gehīwod tō cristenum men, and is earm hǣngyllda; swā swā sē ylca apostol be swylicum cwǣð, "Ic wēne þat ic swunce on ydel, ðāða ic ðow tō Gode gebige: nū gē cēpað dagas and mōndās mid ydelum wīglungum."

Is hwaecere æfter gecynde on gesceapennysse ðæl lichamlic gesceaf ðe eorðe ðecen fulre and mægenfæstre on fullum mōnan þonne on gewanedum. Swā ðæc trēowa, gif hi bēoð on fullum to mōnan gebēawene, hi bēoð heardran and langsfærnan tō getimbrunge, and swifost, gif hi bēoð unsæpige geworhte. Nis ðis nān wīglung, ac is gecyndelic þing þurh gesceapenysse. Hwæt ðæc sēo sē wunderlice geþwærlæcð þæs mōnan ymbrene; symle hi bēoð gefēran on wastme and on wanunge. And swā swā sē mōna dæghwomlice fēower pricon lator ārīst, swā ðæc sēo sē symle fēower pricon lator fīþowð. 

Uton besettan ðūne hiht and þūre gesālōða on þæs ælmihtigan Scyppendes foreseawunge, sē þe ealle gesceafa on ðrim ðingum

1 C, wurmcyne; B, R, wyrmcyne. 2 C, þing; B, R, þing. 
3 C, R, pricum; B, pricon.
gesette, þæt is on gemete, and on getele, and on hefe. ðy him wul dor and lof on ęcnysse. Amen.

II. ÆLFRIC'S HOMILY ON THE INVENTION OF THE HOLY CROSS

(May third)

Men ᵀᵃ lœofostan, nū tō-deg wē wurðiāþ þære Hālgan Rōde gemyn, ðe ūre Dzihten on ō>Password not valid or available. Amen.

Hieronimus, sē wisa mæsseprēost, āwrāt on þære bēc þe wā hātíð “Ecclesiastica Historia,” þæt sum Rōmānisc cāsere wēs Constantinus gehātēn, sē wēs ēawfāst on ōławum and ārfāst on dēdum, cristenra manna fultumigend, and nās ðēah gyt gefulld. Pā wān him ongēan sum wēlhreow heretoga, Maxentius gehātēn, mid micclum ōrýmme, wolde him benāman his lifes and his rīces. Pā fērdē sē cāsere swīcē carful mid fyrdē, and gelēome behēld 10 wið beofonas weard, biddende georne godecundne fultum. Dā geseah hē on swefnē, on ūm scīndan ēastdāle, Dzihtnes rōdetācn dōorwurðīlice scīnan; and him cwǣdon 1 sā tō gesewenlīce englas, “Þū cāsere Constantine, mid ōisum tācne oferswīð ōīne wīderwinnan.” And hē āwēc ᵀᵃ blice for þære gesihtē and for ūn behātenan sige, and mearoode him on hēafē hålig rōdetācn, and on his guðfānan, Gode tō wurðmynte. Hē hēt ōc smiðian of smētum golde ōne līyttē rōde, ᵀᵃ hē lædde on his swīðran, biddende georne þone sēlmihtīgan Wealdend þæt sēo swīðre ne wūrde míre gewemmēd ūrh rēadum blōde Rōmāniscē lēode, ūm þe hē gēnē ōlcrest dugeōe, gif Maxentius āna him wolde ābūgan, ᵀᵃ þē burh gehēold mid hetelum gehānce. Pā hēt Maxentius mid

¹C, only on is legible; comon in margin in another hand; B, cwǣdon, Thorpe, smēdōn.
micclum swicdome oferbrigian tā ās, eal mid scipum, and syððan ðyliaen swā swā ōdre brice, þet sē cāserc sceolde ðærēn becumæ; ac him syllum getimode swā swā hē ōm ōbrum gemynæt. Sē ārlēsa gewende āna of ðäre byrig, and hē ðone here him after ridan; hē ne gemunde ðā, for ðām micclan¹ graman, ðære læsan brice, þe hē ðlēgan hēt, ac rād him āna tō ormētē cāliċe. ðā scipu tōscuton, and hē ðone grund gesōhte mid horse mid ealle, and sē here æststōd āhred fram frēcednyssé for his ānes deǣ. ðō Swā wearð gefyllum þæs cāseres bēn, þat hīs hand nēs besmiten, þe hē rōde hēold, mid āgoñenum blōde hīs āgenre burhware. ðā wearð eal þat folc micclum geogleðod, þat hī möstōn gesunde cyrran tō ðære byrig; and underfēngon ðone cāserc, swā swā hīm gecynde was; and hē mid sige geseat siððan hīs cynestōl, gefullod on Criste, þe hīs folc gehēold.

His môdor wæs cristen, Elena gehāten, swīðe gelyfæd mann, and ðearle ðawfeāst. þā frēde hēo tō Hierusaled, mid fullum gelǣfan, wolde hē rōde findan þē Crist on ðrōwade. Hēo becōm tō ðære stōwe, swā hīre geswutelode God, þurh heofenlicere gebīnæ, and ðafunde ðrēo rōda, ān wæs ðēs Hālendes, and ðā ðōrē ðēora ðēofa. ðā nyste hēo gewiss hwīc wāre Cristes rōd, ārdran þe hē mid tācenum āi geswutelode. þā wearð sēo cwēn micclum geogleðod þat hēo möstē ðone māðm on moldan findan, and siððan ðurh tācenum swutelunge oncnāwan. Ārdrēr ðā cyrcan on ðāre cwealm-stōwe, þær sēo rōd on læg, þām læofoan Drihtne, and bewand þēne dēl ðāre hālgon rōde mid hwītum seolfræ and hī ðēr gesette, and ðone ðērēne dēl lædde tō hīre suna, and ðā lisenan naglas þē wēron ðārifēne þurh Cristes folman, ðāðā hē gefēstnōd was.

Dūs wrat Hieronimus, sē wisa trahtnere, be ðāre hālgon ðrōde, hū hēo wearð gefunden. Gif hwā elles seege, wē scēota tō him. Cristene men secolon sōðlice ābūgan tō gehālgodre rōde on

¹ C, micclum; B, micclan.
Saes Hælendes naman, forðan þe wē nabbad  þā  þe hē on þrōwade,  
ac hire anlicnys bið hālig swā-þēah,  þō þāre wē ābūgað on gebedum  
symle tō þām mihtigan Drihtne, þe for mannum þrōwade; and sēo  
rōd is gemynd his māran þrōwunge, hālig ðūrh hine, þēah þe hēc  
on holte wēoxe.  Wē hī wurðiað  ða for wurðmynte Cristes, sē þē  
ūs ālýsde mid lufe ðūrh hī, þæs wē him þanciað symle on līfe.
WULFSTAN'S SERMON TO THE ENGLISH

WULFSTAN, who also called himself by his Latin name Lupus, Archbishop of York from 1002 to 1023, was — like Ælfric — one of the group of men associated with the revival of learning in England under Dunstan in the latter part of the tenth and early part of the eleventh centuries. His writing is representative of the same period of Old English as Ælfric's but lacks Ælfric's smoothness of style. Although over fifty homilies have been ascribed to him, many of these he probably did not write. Of those indubitably his the best-known is the “Sermon to the English” delivered in 1014, containing a fiery denunciation of the sins of the people in the time of Æthelred the Unready, sins which according to Wulfstan had called down God's wrath upon them in the form of the Danish invasions.

The following text is taken from Hatton MS. 113 (H) in the Bodleian Library (formerly Junius 99), which gives the sermon in its most complete form. With this have been collated three other manuscripts, Cotton Nero A I (N) in the British Museum and Cambridge Corpus Christi MSS. 419, formerly S 14 (C I), and 201, formerly S 18 (C II). All three of these, especially the last two, have omitted passages contained in the Hatton MS., while on the other hand C I and C II have a few interpolations not contained in either H or N. C II is the shortest of the manuscripts, having omitted the most denunciatory parts of the sermon. A fifth but less important manuscript also exists, Bodleian NE. F. IV. 12. The best edition is that of A. S. Napier, Wulfstan's Homilies, Berlin, 1883, which, as well as Sweet’s Anglo-Saxon Reader (9th ed., Oxford, 1922), has been consulted.
Sermo Lupi ad Anglos Quando Dani Maxime Persecuti Sunt Eos, Quod Fuit in Dies Äpelredi Regis

Lōfasan men, geccnāwað þæt sōð is: ðēos woruld is on ofste, and hit nēalēcð þām ende; and ōf hit is on worulde ā swā leng swā wyrse, and swā hit sceal nūde for folces synnan fram dæge tō dæge ēr Antecristes tōcyme yfelian swyċe; and hūru hit wyrċ þæne egeslic and grimlic wide on worulde.

Undersyntað ëac georne þæt ðeofol þūs þēode nū fēla gēare dwelode tō swyċe, and þæt lītly getrīwōa wērōn mid mannūm, þēah hī wel spēcan; and unrihta tō fēla rīcsode on lande, and nās ā fēla manna þē smēade ymbe þā bōte swā georne swā man scolde; ac dæghwamlique man ðīte yfel æfter ðōrum, and unrihta rērde ic and unлага manege ealles tō wide gynde ealle þūs þēode. And wē ëac for ðām habbað fēla byrsta and bysmara gebiden; and gyf wē ënige bōte gebidan sculan, þonne mōte wē þās tō Gode earnian bet þonne wē ñēr ðīson dydon. For ðām mid mīclan earnungan wē geearndon þā yrmdōa þē ās on sittað, and mid swyċe mīclan earnungan wē þā bōte mōtan æt Gode gērēcan, gyf hit sceal heōan fōrō gōdiende wurðan. Lā hwæt wē witan ful georne þæt tō mīclan bryce sceal mycel bōt nūde, and tō mīclum bryne wētē unlītēl, gū man þæt sēr sceal tō ðēte æcwaēcan. And mīcel is nūdþearf ëac manna gehwylcum þæt hē Godes lage gīme 20 heōan fōrō georne bet þonne hē ñēr dyde, and Godes gērīhta mid rīhtē gelēste.

On hǣðenum þēduum ne dear man forhealdan lītel ne mīcel þās þē gelagod is tō gedwolgodæ weorðunge; and wē forhealdad ēghwǣr Godes gērīhta ealles tō gelōme. And ne dear man gwænan on hǣðenum þēduum inne ne ûte ënig þēra þinga þē gedwolgodæn brōht bið and tō lēcume betēht bið: and wē habbað
WULFSTAN’S SERMON TO THE ENGLISH 211

Godes hūs inne and ěte clāne beręptye. And ěsc syndan Godes þēowas mǣbe and munde gewelhwār bedēlde; and sume men secgār þæt gedwolgoda 1 þēnan ne dear man misbēðan on 30 ěnige wisan mid hǣþenum lēodum, swā swā man Godes þēowum nū dēō þō wide, þær Cristene scoldan Godes lage healdan and Godes þēowas griðian.

Ac sōō is þæt ic segte, þearf is þāre bōte, for þām Godes gerihta wanedan tō lange innan þyse earde on æghwylicum ende, and folclaga wyrsedan ealles tō swyēcē syōcēn Æadgār geendode, and hālignessa syndon tō grīōčase wide, and Godes hūs syndon tō clāne beręptye ealdra gerihta and innan bestrypte 2 ēlcrā gerisena; 3 and wydewan syndon wide fornydde on unriht tō ceorle, and tō mǣnige forymde and gehýnede swyēcē, and earme men syndan 40 sāre beswicene and hrōswīcē besyrwde, and ūt of ēisan earde wide gesēalde swyēcē unforworhte fremdum tō gewealde, and cradocild gehēowode þurh wealhrōwe unлага for lītelre þyfēcē wide gynd þās þēode; and frēoriht fornumene, and hrēlihti generwde, and armesriht gewanode, and hrædest is tō cweþenne Godes laga lāsē and lāra forsewene; and ōss we hābbā ealle þurh Godes yrre bysmor gelōme, geccāwe sē ðē cunne, and sē byrst wyror gemāne, þēah man swā ne wēne, ealre bisse bōde, biætan God gebeorge.

For þām hit is on ūs eallum swutol and gesyne þæt wē ðē þyse oftor brǣcon þonne wē bēttan, and ūy is þīsse þēode fela 50 onsēge. Ne dohtē hit nū lange 4 inne ne ěte, ac wēs here and hunger, brynne and blōdytē on gewelhwyleon ende oft and gelōme; and ūs stalu and cwalu, stric and steorfa, orfēwēlma and uncoðu, hōl and hetē and rēpers rēasflāc deredeswīōcē þearle, and ūs un-

1 H, C II, gedwolgoda; C I, N, gedwolgoda.
2 H, berypte; C I, N, bestrypte; C II, bestripte.
3 H, rysena; C II, N, gerisena; C I, gerisna.
4 H, lance; C I, C II, N, lango.
gylda swýcē gedrehton, and ðœ unwedera for oft wǣoldan un-
wæstma.

For þām on þisan earde wæs, swā hit þincan mæg, nū fela
gēara unrihta fela and tealte getrywða æghwæð mid mānum. Ne
bearh nū for oft gesib gesibban þe mā þe fremdan, ne fæder his
bearne, ne hwilum bærn his ðegenum fæder, ne brōðor ðūrum. 60
Ne ðe ænig his lif ne fadode swā swā hē scolde, ne gehadode re-
gollce ne læwedæ lählce; ac worhtan lust ðu tō lage ealles tō ge-
lōme, and nāðor ne hōldæn ne lære ne lage Godes ne māna swā
swā wē scolde. Ne ænig wið ðërne getrywlice þōhte swā rihte
swā hē scolde, ac mæst ælc swīcðe and ðūrum dereðæ wordes and
dāde; and hūru unrihtlicæ mæst ælc ðërne sæftan hēawæð mid
scandliche onscytan and mid wrohtlācæ; dō māre gyf hē mæge.

For þām hēr syn on lande ungetrywðæ miclæ for Gode and for
worulde, and ðæc hēr syn on earde on mistlice wīsan hlāfordswicæ
manege. And ealra mæst hlāfordswicæ sæ bið on worulde 70
þæt man his hlāfordes sæule beswicæ and ful mycel hlāfordswicæ ðæc
bið on worulde þæt man his hlāfords of life forrāðæ oððan of lande
līfendo næ drīfe; and ægþer is geworden innan þisan earde. Æad-
werd mað forrāðæ and syððan æcwealde, and æfter þām forbernde.
And godsibbas and godbærn to fela mað forspilæ wide gynd þēs
þēode, tōæcan ðūran ealles tō manegæ þæt man unsyclidæ forfør
ealles tō wide. And ealles tō manegæ hāllice stōwæ wide forwurðan
þurh þæt þæt man sumæ men ðæ þēm gelōgode swā man nā ne scolde,
gif man on Godes gīcæ mǣcē witan wolde. And cristenes folces
tō fela man gesælde ut of þām earde nū ealle hwiæ; and eal 80
þæt is Gode lāð, gelīfe sæ þē wılle....

£æc wē witan georne hwær sēo yrmō gewearð þæt fæder gesælde
bearn wið wœorðæ, and bærn his mōdor, and brōðor sealde ðērne

1 H, þincæ; C I, þyncæ; C II, N, þincæ.
2 H, līfendo; N, līfendo; C I, līfendo; C II, līfendo.
fremdum tō gewealde ūt of ðisse þēode; and eal þæt syndon micle and egeslice dāda, understande sē þe wille. And gāt hit is māre and ðac mēningarfaldre1 ðæt dereð þysse þēode. Mēnige syndan forsworene and swȳcē forlogene, and wed synd tōbocene oft and gelōme; and þæt is gesynē on ðisse þēode þæt ūs Godes yrre hetelice on sit, gecnāwe sē þe cuenne.

And là hū mēg māre scamu þurh Godes yrre mānnum 90 gelimpan þonne ūs dēō gelōme for āgenum gewyrhtum? Êēah þrāla hwylc hlāforde æþlēape, and of cristendōme tō wicinge weorcē, and hit ðæt þām eft geweorcē þæt wæþngewrixc weorcē gemāne þegene and þræle; gyf þrāl þāne þegen fullice āfylle, liege ágyldē cære hīs māgē, and gyf sē þegen þāne þrāl þe hē ār āhte fullice āfylle, gyldē þegengyldē. Ful earmlice laga and scandlice nūdgyld burh Godes yrre ūs syn gemāne, understande sē þe cuenne, and fela ungelimpa gelimpō þysse þēode oft and gelōme. Ne dohte hit nū lange inne ne ūte, ac wæs here and hetē on gewel-
hwilcum ende oft and gelōme, and Engle nū lange eal sigelēase, 100 and tō swȳcē geyrgdē 2 þurh Godes yrre, and flotmen swā strange þurh Godes geþafunge þæt oft on gefeohte ān fēscō tŷne, and hwilum lās, hwilum mā, eal for ūrum synnum.... And oft þrāl þāne þegen þe ðē wēs hīs hlāford cnyt swȳcē fæste, and wyrcē him tō þræle þurh Godes yrre.

Wālā cāre yrmōcē and wālā cāre woruldscame þe nū habbað Engle eal þurh Godes yrre! Oft twēgen sēmen oðōcē þry hwilum drīfā þē drēfe cristena mānnā frām sē tō sē ūt þurh þās þēode gewyledē tōgēdēre ūs eallum tō woruldscame, gyf wē on cornost mēnigē cūðan, oðōcōn wē woldan ðē riht understandan. Ac 110 ealne þāne bysmor þe wē oft þōliāc wē gyldāc mid wēorcēscype

1 H, mēningar fleardre; C I, mēningarfaldre; C II, N, mēningarfaldre.
2 H, geyrgdē; C II, geyrgdē; N, geyrgdē, with i inserted after r; C I omits passage.
bæm þe ūs scendað: wé him gyldaþ singállice, and hý ūs hýnað
dæghwamlice. Hý her giað and hý bernade, rýpað and ræfiað, and
to sceipe lædað; and lá hwæt is ánig ðæter on eallum bæm gelimpum
būtan Godes yrre ofer þæs þeode swytolgesyne?

Nis ðac nán wundor, þeah ūs mislimpe, for þám wé witan ful
gorne þæt nú fela gēara men nā ne rōhten for oft hwæt hý worhtan
wordes oðde dāde; ac wearð þes þeodscyple, swā hit þincan mæg,
swýðe forsyngod þurh mænigfealde synna and þurh fela misdāda,
þurh morðdaða and ðurh māndāda, þurh gitsunga and ðurh 120
gifernessa, þurh stala and þurh strūdunga, þurh mænsylena and
ðurh hēþene 1 unsida, þurh swēdōmas and ðurh searcrafteas,
þurh láhbrycas and ðurh æswicas, þurh mægrēas and ðurh man-
slihtas, þurh hādbrycas and ðurh æwbrycas, þurh sibblegeru and
ðurh mistlice forligru. And ðac syndan wide, swā wē ðeowædan,
þurh ábrycas and ðurh wedbrycas and ðurh mistlice læasunga
forloren and forloren mā þonne scolde, and frēolsbricas and fasten-
bricas wide geworhte oft and gelōme. And ðac hēr syn on earde
apostatan ábroðene, and cyrichatan hetole, and léodhatan grimme
ealles tō manege, and oferhogan wide godecundra rihtlāga and
130
cristenra þǣawa, and hōcorwyrdre dysige ēghwær on þeode oftost
on þā þing þe Godes bodan bōdað, and swyðost on þā þing þe
gernost tō Godes lage gebryrað mid rihtē.

And hý is nū geworden wide and wide tō ful yfelan gewunan
þæt menn swýðor scamað nū for gōdādan þonne for misdādan;
for ðám tō oft man mid hōcere gōdāda hyrweð and gōdfyrhte
lehtreð ealles tō swýðe, and swyðost man tāleð and mid olle
gegrēteð ealles tō gelōme þā ðe riht lufiað and Godes ege habbað
be ánigum dāle. And ðurh þæt þe man swā dēð þæt man eal
hyrweð þæt man scolde herian, and tō forð láþað 2 þæt man 140

1 H, heþene; C I, C II, N, heþene.
2 H, laþet; C II, N, laþet; C I, laþeð.
scolde lufian, þurh þæt man gebringeð ealles tö manege on yfelan geðance and on undæde, swä þæt hý ne scamað ná, þéah hý syngian swýðe, and wið God sylfne forwyrkan hí mid ealle; ac for ídelan onscytan hý scamað þæt hý bêtan heora misdāda, swä swä bêc tæcan, gelice þám dwæsan þe for heora prýtan lêwe nellað beorgan ær hý ná ne magan, þéah hý eall willan.

Hér syndan þurh synlêawa, swä hit þincan mæg, säre gelêwede ðó manege on earde. Hér syndan, swä wé ær sêdon, mannslagan and mægslagan and sácserdabanan and mynsterhatan and hlæfordswican and ðèbere apostatan, and hér syndan mãnsvaran and 150 morðorwrhtan, and hér syndan hádbrecan and ðwþbrecan, and ðúhrh siblegeru and ðúhrh mistlice forligeru forsýngode swýðe, and hér syndan myltestran and bearmmyrðran and fûle forlegene hó- rings manege, and hér syndan wiccan and walcerian, and hér syndan rýperas and rëafaras and woruldstrûderas and ðœofas and þeðscaðan and wedlogan and wærlogan, and hrœdest is tö cwe- þenne mâna and misdāda ungerim ealra.

And þæs ús ne scamað ná, ac þæs ús scamað swýðe þæt wé bôte áginnan, swä swä bêc tæcan, and þæt is gesýne on þisse earman forsyngodon þêode. Éalâ mycel magan manege gýt hér- 160 tôcancan ðæpe beðencan þæs þe án man ne mihte on brædinge á- smêagean hú earmlice hit gefaren is nû ealle hþile wide gynd þâs þêode. And smêage hûru georne gehwå hine sylfne, and þæs ná ne latige ealles tö lange; ac lá on Godes naman utan dôn swä ús úcod is, beorgan ús sylfum swä wé geornost magan, þé lâs wé ætgæedere ealle forweordan.

Àn þéodwita wæs on Bryttta tidum, Gildas hâtte, sê áwrát be heora misdâdum, hú hí mid heora synnan swä oferlice swýðe God gegremedon þæt hé lêt æt nyhstan Engla here heora eard gewinnan, and Bryttta dugeðe fordôn mid ealle. And þæt wæs geworden, 17c þæs þe hé sêde, þurh gelæredra regolbryce and ðúhrh lêwedra
labbryce, þurh rícra rēaflāc, and þurh gitsunge wōhgestrēona, þurh lēoda 1 unlag, and þurh wōhdōmas, þurh biseopa āsolicennesse and unsnotornesse, and þurh lýðre yrhrōe Godes bydela, þe sōðes geswugedan ealles tō gelōme, and clūmedan mid ceaflum þær hē scoldan clypian, þurh fūlne ēac folces gālsan, and þurh oferfylla and mēnigfealde synna heora eard hē forworhton, and sylfe hī forwurdan.

Ac utan dōn swā ēs þearf is, warnian ēs be swilcan; and sōð is þæt ic secge, wyrsan dāda wē witan mid Englum sume ge- 180 wordene þonne wē mid Bryttan āhwār gehyrdan; and ðī ēs is þearf micel þæt wē ēs beþencan, and wið God sylfne þingian georne. And utan dōn swā ēs þearf is, gebūgan tō rihte, and be suman dāle unriht forlētan, and bētan swýðe georne þæt wē ēr brēcan; and utan God lufian and Godes lagum fyligean, and gelēstan swýðe georne þæt þæt wē behētan þā wē fulluht underfēngan oðrōn þā þē set fulluhte ūre forespecan wēron. And utan word and weorc rihtlice fadian, and ūre ingēðane clēnsian georne, and ēō and wēd wærlice healdan, and sume getrywða habban ūs betwēnan būtan uncraeftan, and utan gelōme understandan þone mielan dōm 190 þē wē ealle tō sculan, and beorgan 2 ūs georne wið þone weallendan bryne helle wītes, and geearnian ūs þā mērōa and þā myrhōa þe God hērō gegeawrod þām þē his willan on worulde gewyrcað God ūre helpe. Amen.

1 H, N, leode; C I, C II omit the passage.
2 H, beorhgan; N, C I, C II, beorgan.
XI

LAWS OF ALFRED

Among the many tasks which King Alfred set for himself was a recodification of the laws of his kingdom. Ine, one of his predecessors in Wessex, who lived in the late seventh and early eighth centuries, had enacted a code of laws which became known as Ine's Laws. These Alfred reënacted, putting them into the language of his own day and adding to them new material.

The following selections from the Laws, including some of Alfred's additions and some of the reënacted laws of Ine, are taken from MS. 173 in Corpus Christi College Library, Cambridge, the same manuscript which contains the Parker Chronicle. The standard edition of the Laws is that of F. Liebermann, Die Gesetze der Angelsächsen, Tom. III, Halle, 1903, which with Thorpe's Ancient Laws and Institutes of England, London, 1840, has been consulted.

VI

Be circena friðe

Ēac we settað æghwelcere cirican ðe biscep gehālgodæ ðis frið, gif hie fāh mon geierne ðēðe geārne, þæt hine seofan nihtum nān mon ùt ne tēo; gif hit þonne hwā dō, þonne ðe hē scyldig cyninges mundbyrde ond þære cirican friðes, māre gif hē ðēr māre of gefō gif hē for hungre libban mǣge, būton hē self ùt feohte.

Gif hiwan hiora cirican māran þearfe hæbben, healde hine mon on ðūrum ærne ond ðæt næbbe þon mā dura þonne sīo cirice; gewite ðære cirican ealdor þæt him mon on þam fīrste mete ne selle.
VIII

Be ʒon þe mon on cynges healle feohte

Gif hwæ in cyninges healle gefeohte ʒeðæ his wæpn gebrēde and hine mon gefō, sie ðæt on cyninges dōme swa dæð swā lif, swā hē him forgifan wille. Gif hē losige and hine mon eft gefō, forgielde hē hine self ǣ be his weregilde, and ðone gylt gebēte swā wer swā wite, swā hē gewyrht ēge.

XIII

Be dumbera monna dādum

Gif mon sie dumb ʒeðæ dēaf geboren þæt hē ne mæge synna on-secggan ne geandettan, bête sē fæder his misdāda.

XXXVII

Be bōclondum

Sē mon sē ʒe bōcland hæbbe ond him his mægas læfden, ʒonne setton wē þæt hē hit ne mōste sellan of his mægburge, gif þær bið gewrit ʒeðæ gewitnes ðæt hit ðāra manna forbod wēre þe hit on fruman gestrīndon ond þāra þæt hit him sealdon, þæt hē swā ne mōte; ond þæt þonne on cyninges ond on biscopes gewitnesse geregce beforan his mægum.

XL

Be hēafod-wunde

Hēafod-wunde tō bôte, gif ʒa bān bēoþ būtū ðyrel, xxx scillinga geselle him mon.

Gif ðæt ðūterre bān bið ðyrel, geselle xv scillinga tō bôte.
LAWS OF ALFRED

XLI

Be feax-wunde

Gif in feaxe bið wund inces lang, geselle ānne scillinga tō bōte.
Gif beforan feaxe bið wund inces lang, twēgen scillinga tō bōte.

XLII

Be ēar-slege

Gif him mon āслēa ēper ēare of, geselle xxx scillinga tō bōte.
Gif se hlyst oðstande, þæt hē ne mēge gehīeran, geselle lx scillinga tō bōte.

XLVII

Be sunnan-dæges weorcum

Gif ǣowmon wyrce on sunnan-dæg be his hlāfordes hēse, sē hē frīoh, ond sē hlāford geselle xxx scillinga tō wīte.
Gif þonne sē ǣōwa būtan his gewitnesse wyrcne, þolī hīs 40 hīde.
Gif ǣonne sē frīgea ðī dæge wyrcne būtan his hlāfordes hēse, Þolī hīs frēotes.

LI

Be stale

Gif hwā stalie, swā hīs wīf nyte ond hīs bēarn, geselle lx scillinga tō wīte.
Gif hē ǣonne stalie on gewitnesse ealles hīs hīredes, gongen hīe ealle on Æowot.
X wīntre cnīht mēg blōn Æowē gewīta.
LVI

Be gefongenum ðeofum

Gif ðeof sie gefongen, swelte hē dēaēe, oðēe his lif be his were
man ēlīse.

LVII

Be ðām ðē hīora gewitnesa beforan biscepe ðēogað
Gif hwa beforan biscepe his gewitnesse ond his wed ðēoðe, gebōte
mid cxx scillinga.
ðēofas wē hātār oþ vii men; from vii hlōð oþ xxxv; siððan bið here.

LX

Be ðēof-slege

Sē ðē ðeof ofslīhtā sē mōt gecyðan mid ðē ē hīne synnigne
ofslīgē nalles ðā gegildan.

LXXV

Be ðōn þe mon wīf bycgge ond þonne sīo gift tōstande
Gif mon wīf gebycgge, ond sīo gyft fōrð ne cume, āgifē ðēt feoh,
ond forgieldē, ond gebōte þām byrgēan, swā hīs borgbryce sīe.

LXXVIII

Be mon-slihtē

Sē ðē on ðāre fōrē wāre þēt mon monnan ofslīgē, getrīewe hīne
ðāes sleges ond ðā fōrē gebōte be ðāes ofslegenan wergielde; gif hīs
wergielde sīe cc scillinga gebōte mid 1 scillinga ond ðī ūlcan ryhtē
dō man be ðām dōrborēnran.
LAXXII

Be þon þe ryht-gesamhiwan bearn hæbben ond þonne
sē wer gewite

Gif ceorl ond his wif bearn hæbben gemêne, ond fēre sē ceorl
fôrð, hæbbe sīo mōdor hire bearn ond fēde: āgife hire mon vi
scillinga tô fostre, cū on sumera, oxan on wintra; healden þâ
måges þone frumstōl, oð þæt hit gewintred sīe.

CIII

Be cīus horne

Cūu horn bīð twēgea pæninga, oxan tægl bīð scilling weorð,
cūs bīð fifa, oxan ēage bīð v pæninga 1 weorð, cūs bīð scilling
weorð; mon sceal simle tô beregafele āgisan aet ānum wyrhtan vi
wēga.

CXIII

Be sceāpes gonge mid his fliese

Sceāap sceal gongan mid his fliese oð midne sumor; oðēg gilde
þæt flies mid twâm pæningum.

CXVI

Be wergeldcēofofes forefonge

Gif mon wergeldcēof gefēð ond hē losige ðy dæge þām monnum
þe hine gefōð, þēah hine mon gefō ymb niht, nāh him mon māre æt
þone fulwite.

1 MS. v. p.
THE two following wills of Alfred and Lufa are representative of this type of document in Old English. Both are written in the dialect of Kent or Surrey. The Alfred who made the first of these wills was evidently, from his title of dux, one of King Alfred’s war leaders. This same Alfred, his wife Werburg, and his daughter Althryth, appear also as the donors of a beautiful Latin manuscript of the Gospels which, they state in the inscription, they purchased from the heathen and gave to the Church for the glory of God. The second will, which was made by a nun, Lufa, provides for the church at Mundlingham in the time of Archbishop Cænnoth.

Alfred’s Will, Stowe Charter 20 in the British Museum, is written on both sides of a single piece of parchment from which former writing has been erased. The script has two labels, one in Old English, *pis is Ælfredes ærfegewrit*, the other in Latin, *Testamentum Elfredi ducis*, below which is written *anglice*. Lufa’s Will is also in the British Museum, in MS. Cotton Augustus II, 92. Both have been edited by Sweet in his *Oldest English Texts*, Early English Text Society, 1885. The following texts are from the manuscripts, Sweet’s edition also having been consulted.

I. ALFRED’S WILL

Ic Ælfred dux hātu writan ond cyðan an ðissum gewrite Ælfrēde regi ond allum his weotum ond geweotan, ond ēc swylce mīnum mēgum ond mīnum gefēorum, þā men þe ic mines ærfes ond mines bōclondes săolest onn, ǣt is þonne Wēburg mīn wif ond uncer gemēne bearin.¹ ǣt is þonne et erestan an Sondenstede ond on Selesdüne XXXII hīda, ond on Westarhām XX hīda, ond on Cloppahām XXX hīda, ond on Leangafeldā VI hīda, ond on

¹ *MS. v.*
Horsalæge X hida, ond on Netelæmstyte VI hida. Ic Ælfrêd dux sello Wéburge ond Alhórye 1 uncum geménum bearne æfter minum dege þás lond mid cwice erfe ond mid earfe ond mid 10 allum ðingum þe tó londum belimpæ. Ond twâ þusendu swíena ic heom sello mid þém londum, gif hí hí gehaldeþ mid þære clênnisse þe uncer wordgeæwedu seondan. Ond hí gebrenge æt Sanète Pêtre min twâ wergeld, gif ðet Godes willa sèo þæt hí ðæt færeld ðæge. Ond æfter Wéburge dæge sèo Alhórye þá lond unbëfitten on Sondeæmstyte ond on Selesdûne ond Leangafelde. Ond gif hí hí bearne hæbbe, feó ðæt bearne þó ðæm londum æfter hire; gif hí hí bearne næbbe, feó bonne an hire rehtfaderen sío nêste hond tó þém londe ond tó þæm ærne. Ond swá hwylce minra fœdrenmégæ swá ðæt sío ðæt híne tó ðan gehagige ðæt hí ða ðóoro lond 20 begeotan mæge ond wille, bonne gebygege hí þá lond æt hire mid halfe weoræ. Ond swá hwylce mon swá ðæt sío ðæt ðæs londes brúce oer minne dæg on Cloppahám, þanne geselle hí CC peninga ðéghwylce gêre tó Ceortes-ége æt Ælfrêdes sàwle tó feormfultumæ. Ond ic sello Æðelwalde minum sunu III hida boclondes: II hida on Hwátedûne, aëses hídes an Gátaðûne, ond him sello þer-tó C swína; ond gif së cyning him geunnan wille þæs folclondes tó ðæm boclonde, bonne hæbbe hí ond brúce; gif hit ðæt ne sío, bonne selle hí ond swá hwâðer swá hí wille, swá ðæt lond an Horsalæge, swé ðæt an Leangafelde. Ond ic sello Berhtsige minum mëge 30 ðán híde boclondes on Læncanfelda, ond þer-tó C swína; ond geselle hí C swína tó Cristes-cirican for më ond fer mine sàwle, ond C tó Ceortes-ége; ond þone oferæcan mon gedâde gind mynsterhámæs tó Godes ciricum in Æfregum ond in Cænt, þá hwile þe hí lêstan willæn. Ond ic sello Sigewulfæ minum mëge oer Wéburge dæg ðæt lond an Netelhæmstyte; ond Þíglf geselle of ðæm londe C pëninga tó Cristes-cirican. Ond ðéghwylce þâra ærfewearda þe æfter him tó ðæm londe fœe, bonne ðægeofen hí þa ilcan elmessan

1 MS. Alhdryeâe.
tō Cristes-cirican for Ælfrēdes säwle, þā hwile þe fulwiht stō, ond hit man on þēm londe begeotan mæge. Ond ic sello ǣ ǣadrēde minum mēge þet lond on Fearnlēge æfter Æelrēdes dage, gif hē hit tō him geearnian wile; ond hē geselle of þēm londe XXX ombra cornes æghwelse gēre tō Hrōfescestre; ond sīo þīs lond gewritten ond unbefliten æfter Æadrēdes dege in Æelrēdes rehtmēodo-drencyynn þā hwile þe fulwiht 1 sīo on Angelcynnes ēalonde. Æþēs foresprēc ond þēs gewrihtu þē hēr-beufan ðwresctene stondāð, ic Ælfrēd willio ond wille þæt hīo sīon sōðfæstlice forðweard getrymed mē ond minum ærfewearðum. Gif þæt อาจารย์SONNE Gōd ællmēhtig getēod habbe, ond mē þæt on læne gelīþ þæt mē gesibbra ærfeweard forðcynmēð wēnnedhādes ond ðacāned weorcēð, ǣanne ann ǣ ic þēm ofer minne dæg alles mīnes ærfes tō brūcenne swā hīm lēofust sīo. An swā hwylc mon swā þās gōd ond þēs geoфе ond þēs gewrihto ond þēs word mid rehte haldan wille ond gēlastan, gehalde hine heofones cyning in þissum līfe ondwardum, ond þāc swā in þēm tōwardan līfe; ond swā hwylc mon swā hīo wonie ond breoce, gewonie hīm Gōd almahītīg hīs weordārde ond þēc swā hīs säwel ārē.

Hēr sindon þǣra manna nāman ðwrisctene þē ǣosse wisan geweoton sindon.
+ ic Æðerēd arcbiscop mid þǣre hālgan Cristes rōdetācne þēs word ond þēs wisan fæstnie and write.
+ Ælfrēd, duċ + Beōnheāh, prēost + Wealhēdhelm, diacon
+ Beorhtuulf, duċ + Bēagstān, prēost + Wine, sub diacon
+ Beornhelm, abbod + Wulfheāh + Sāfrehē
+ Earduulf, abbod + Æðelwulf, prēost + Cēolmund, munuc
+ Wāburg + Earduulf, prēost + Ēadmund, munuc
+ Sīgfrēð, prēost + Beornocē, diacon + Ēadwald, munuc
+ Sīgulf, munuc

1 MS. fulwilhte.
WILLS

II. LUFA'S WILL

Ic, Lufa, mid Godes gefe ancilla domini wes sōecende ond smēa-
cende ymb mine sāuliċearfe mid Cēolnoðs ærcebiscopes geēhahte, ond āara hiona et Cristes cirican. Willa ic gesellan of tēm ārfe
ċe mē God forgef ond mine frīond tō gefultemedan elce ġere LX
ambra maltes ond CL hlāfa, L hwītelāfa, CXX elmēshāfes, ān
hraēr, ān suīm, IIII weōras, II wēga spīces ond ċēsēs ām hīgum
tō Cristes cirēcan for mine sāule ond minra frīonda ond mēga ċe
mē tō góde gefultemedan, ond ċet sie simle to adsumsio Sanctæ
Marie ymb XII mōnaë. End suē ēihwele mon swē ċis lond hebbe
minra ārbenumena ċis āgefe ond mitten fulnē huniges, X 10
gōes, XX henfuglas.

Ic, Cēolnoð, mid Godes gefe ærcebiscop, mid Cristes rōdetācne
ċis festne ond write. Bēagmund, prēost, geōafie ond mid write.

+ Beornfrið, prēost, geōafie ond mid write.
+ Wealghere, prēost + Swīōberht, diacon
+ Ōsmund, prēost + Beornhēah, diacon
+ Dēimund, prēost + Æċelmund, diacon
+ Æċelwald, diacon + Wīghelm, diacon
+ Werbald, diacon + Lubo
+ Stīfērō, diacon

Ic, Luba, ċaċmōd Godes tīwen, ċās forecwedenan gōd ond ċās
elmessan gesette ond gefestnie ob minem erfelane et Mundlinghām
ōm hīum tō Cristes cirēcan. Ond ic bidde ond an Godes libgendenes
nanam bebiade ċām men ċe ċis land ond ċis erbe hebbe et Mund-
linghām ċet hē ċās gōd fortēste ċō wīorolde ende. Sē man sē ċis
healdan wille ond lēstan ċet ic beboden hebbe an ċisem gēwrie,
sē him seald ond gehealden sīa hiabenlice blēdsung. Sē his fer-
werne oōōe hit āgele sē him seald ond gehealden helle wīte, būte
hē tō fulre būte gecerran wille Gode ond mannum. Uene Ualetē.

Lufa þinegggewrit.
POETRY

OLD ENGLISH poetry with a few exceptions exists in four manuscripts:

(1) Cotton Vitellius A XV, one of the many manuscripts belonging early in the seventeenth century to Sir Robert Cotton and now in the British Museum, containing in addition to seven prose pieces, the poems Beowulf and Judith;

(2) Junius XI, bequeathed to the Bodleian Library at Oxford by Francis Du Jon or Junius, containing the so-called Cædmonian poems, Genesis, Exodus, Daniel, and a fourth poem of different character, Christ and Satan;


(4) the Vercelli Book or Codex Vercellensis, which was discovered in 1822 by a German scholar, F. Blum, at Vercelli, near Milan, and is now in the library of the cathedral of that town, containing Andreas, The Fates of the Apostles, Address of the Soul to the Body, Dream of the Rood, Elene, and a fragment, Falseness of Men.

The entire body of Old English poetry is printed in Grein-Wülker, Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Poesie, 3 vols., Cassel, 1883, Leipzig, 1894, 1898. An English edition of the poetry, begun by the late Professor George P. Krapp of Columbia University, is in course of preparation.
Old English verse is unrhymed and alliterative, and, with very few exceptions, is not grouped into stanzaic form. Each line is divided into two parts, which may or may not be scanned alike but which are united by means of alliteration, that is by the repetition of the same initial consonant or vowel sounds. Alliteration in Old English verse always occurs in a stressed syllable. There are two of these stressed syllables in each half-line. The first one in the second half-line always contains the alliterative letter. With this may alliterate the first stress of the first half-line, the second stress of the first half-line, or very frequently both of these. The second stressed syllable of the second half-line does not alliterate unless by chance. Each consonant alliterates only with itself, the combinations sc, sp, st being considered as three individual sounds, sc alliterating only with sc, sp with sp, st with st; but any vowel or diphthong may alliterate with any other vowel or diphthong, a with e, æ with eo, and so forth.

The following examples will show the main stresses in a line and the alliteration:

wið lāðra gehwæne lānd ealgodon (Brunanburh, 9)
(alliteration of first and third stressed syllables)

Ėalā þu mēra middangeardes (Christ, 275)
(alliteration of second and third stressed syllables)

folc ðēfe frēoburh, þær hē æfėded wæs (Beowulf, 693)
(alliteration of first, second, and third stressed syllables)

1 The system described in the following paragraphs is that given by the German scholar, Eduard Sievers, in Paul and Braune's Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur, Vols. X (1885), XII (1887). It has been questioned by many modern scholars but since no one as yet has devised a better one, it is still generally taught.
The unit of scansion in Old English poetry is the half-line. Each half-line has two main stresses which divide it into two feet. A foot ordinarily consists of two main parts, one stressed and the other unstressed. There are, however, two other types of foot. One consists solely of a stressed syllable; the other, which usually follows the first, has three parts, one heavily stressed, one lightly stressed, and the third unstressed. Primary stress usually falls on a long root syllable. For this long syllable, however, may be substituted what is known as resolved stress, a short stressed syllable followed by an unstressed one, which together give the effect of a long syllable, as, for example, *beadu*. The stress may fall sometimes on a short syllable alone when it immediately follows a long syllable, especially in Type C below, and occasionally when one would normally expect a long syllable.

The secondary stress may fall on a root syllable, on the root syllable of the second part of a compound, noun or adjective, and on certain medial syllables, among them the first part of the present participle ending, or of the infinitive and preterite endings of Second Class Weak verbs. Inflectional endings, verbal prefixes, the prefixes *be-*, *ge-*, and *for-* in nouns, prepositions, and conjunctions are never stressed. As a rule the part of speech most often taking the main stress is the noun, after which come the adjective, the adverb, and least often the verb. A syllable receiving stress in one line must not necessarily receive it in another.
There are five types to which the scansion of the half-line usually conforms. Of these the first is by far the most common. They are as follows:

A (trochaic) \[ \_ | \_ \]
- eorla drihten (Brunanburh, 1b)
- wundrum sceþne (Panther, 19b);

with resolved stress:
- hafelan hýdan (Beowulf, 1372a)
- Ēadmund æðeling (Brunanburh, 3a);

with a varying number of unstressed syllables in the first foot:
- wyrdæ wiðstondan (Wanderer, 15b)
- fœores hi ne röhton (Maldon, 260b)
- wadan ofer wealdas (Genesis, 2886a)
- weoruld under heofonum (Wanderer, 107b);

occasionally with anacrusis:
- hë bræc þone bordweall (Maldon, 277a);

B (iambic) \[ \_ | \_ \]
- þurh dēaðes nýd (Beowulf, 2454a);

with a varying number of syllables in either foot:
- Is þám dōme næah (Christ, 782b)
- ofer landa fela (Beowulf, 311b)
- þæs sig Metode þanc (Beowulf, 1778b)
ealra cyninga Cyning (Christ, 215a)
on þæm sē rica bād (Beowulf, 310b)
mid þinne Wuldorēder (Christ, 217b)
ofer ealne foldan sceat (Christ, 72b)
gif he ūs geunnan wīle (Beowulf, 346b)
þæt he dōgora gehwām (Beowulf, 88a)
þū tida gehwane (Christ, 107b)
þæt hit on wealle sætstōd (Beowulf, 891b);

C (iambic-trochaic) * -|

on burh ridan (Maldon, 291b)
on lides bögeme (Brunanburh, 27a);

with a varying number of unaccented syllables in the first foot
him waes Frēan engla (Genesis, 2860b)
Ic eom frōd fēores (Maldon, 317a)
hyra winedrihten (Maldon, 263b)
wolde his sunu cwellan (Genesis, 2905b)
mid heora herelāfum (Brunanburh, 47a)
þæs þē æfre sundbūend (Christ, 73a);

with the second stress on a short syllable:
sē waes wreccena (Beowulf, 898a)
with compound words, which are often found in this type:

Wanderer, 70b)
(Beowulf, 740a);

ac he gefeng hræde

in corðscæfæ (Wanderer, 84a)

hæfde aglæca (Beowulf, 893a);

D (monosyllabic-trisyllabic), a type in which the secondary stress occurs

(a) \[ \underline{\text{-}} \underline{\text{-}} \underline{\text{-}} \underline{\text{.}} \]
(b) \[ \underline{\text{-}} \underline{\text{-}} \underline{\text{-}} \underline{\text{.}} \]

(a) feohht earmost (Maldon, 281b)

gärmittinge (Brunanburh, 50a)

min möðsefa (Seafarer, 59a)

sunu Healfdenes (Beowulf, 2147a);

with a second syllable in the first foot:

lære longsume (Christ, 44a)

söhte sele dręorig (Wanderer, 25a)

Byrhtwold mæpelode (Maldon, 309a);

(b) hær hilderinc (Brunanburh, 39a)

blöd ëdrum dranc (Beowulf, 742b)

dyneō ðeop gesceafht (Christ, 930a)

eaforan ellorstå (Beowulf, 2451a);
B (trisyllabic-mono syllabic), the reverse of D, ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>sārigne sang</td>
<td>(Beowulf, 2447a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hrīmcældne sæ</td>
<td>(Wanderer, 4b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>heofonengla þrēat</td>
<td>(Christ, 927b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fealholte swurd</td>
<td>(Maldon, 166b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>stedefæste hæleō</td>
<td>(Maldon, 249b);</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

with an additional unstressed syllable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>sealṭyþā gelāc</td>
<td>(Seafarer, 35a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hlēorbolster onfēng</td>
<td>(Beowulf, 688b);</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

occasionally with an unstressed syllable after the first main stress:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ealdorlangne tir</td>
<td>(Brunanburh, 3b).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although the majority of lines may be scanned according to these rules, certain lines of unusual length, known as hypermetric lines, do not conform to any of the five types. They usually have three stresses to the half-line and may commonly be found in groups. Lines 391 ff. of Genesis and the last five lines of The Wanderer are examples.

In conclusion two common stylistic devices of Old English poetry may be described briefly. The first of these, which Old English had in common with Old Norse, is the kenning, a metaphorical figure of speech in which an object is mentioned not directly but by its attributes. Examples are numerous and add greatly to the distinctive beauty of the poetry. By way of illustration: the sea is described as “the whale-path” (hron-rād), “the sea-bird’s bath”
(ganotes bæð); the ship is the "wave-floater" (wæg-flota); the harp is the "glee-wood" (gleo-bēam); the body is the "bone-house" (bēn-hūs); the devil is the "soul-slayer" (gāst-bona); swords are the "leavings of hammers" (hamora láfe); and ashes are the "leavings of brands" (bronda láfe).

The second is litotes, a figure of speech in which "an affirmative is expressed by the negative of its opposite." Two examples from Beowulf follow:

Nalæs hi hine læssan lācum tēodan,  
þēodgestrēonum, þon þā dydon,  
þē hine set frumsceafte forōnsendon  
āenne ofer yōs umborwesende. (ll. 43–46)

"They did not provide him [Scyld] with lesser gifts, nation-treasure, than those who sent him forth at the beginning, alone over the waves, etc.," meaning that the funeral-ship of Scyld was loaded with greater treasures than was the ship in which he was set adrift on the sea as a child;

ne his lifdagas lāoda ānigum  
nytte tealde, (ll. 793–4a)

"nor did he [Beowulf] count his [Grendel's] life-days beneficial to any of the people," the implication being that Grendel alive was a menace to the Danes. An interesting study of litotes was made by Miss Helaine Newstead in a Columbia University thesis for the degree of A.M., Litotes in Anglo-Saxon Poetry, 1928.
XIII

GENESIS

The Old English Genesis is the first of four poems contained in the unique eleventh-century manuscript in the Bodleian Library known as Junius XI, the most beautiful of all the Old English poetical manuscripts. Junius XI belonged in the seventeenth century to Archbishop Ussher, who gave it to the Dutch scholar, Francis Du Jon, who after having it printed presented it to the library at Oxford.

The first three poems appear in the manuscript as one long poem divided into cantos. Cantos 1–41, comprising what is known as the poem Genesis, are a paraphrase of the first twenty-two chapters of the Old Testament; cantos 42–49, known as Exodus, give the story of the departure of the Israelites from Egypt and the crossing of the Red Sea, and are based chiefly on Chapters 13 and 14 of the book of Exodus; cantos 50–55, known as Daniel, paraphrase the first five chapters of the book of Daniel. All three poems were ascribed by Junius to Cædmon, chiefly because they contained material which Cædmon, according to Bede, had turned into verse. This theory, held by all the early editors, no longer obtains. Just what Cædmon's share was in the composition of the poems, if indeed he had any part, has been the subject of much dispute. He may have inspired, if he did not actually write them, and if so, the term Cædmonian Poems, by which they are often known, would be appropriate and fairly accurate. The three poems, the authorship of which is uncertain, were probably placed in their present form by the scribe of the Manuscript, who was also the compiler.

1 The fourth poem, Christ and Satan, is distinct from the other three, and is not Cædmonian in character.

* See supra, p. 182 ff.
Of the three poems **Exodus** is probably the oldest, followed by **Daniel** and **Genesis**. Editors, however, differ greatly on the relative dates.

**Genesis** itself is the work of at least two different hands, for it has been shown that ll. 235–851, now known as **Genesis B**, are an Old English translation of an Old Saxon original. This theory, first advanced in 1875 by the German scholar, Sievers, was conclusively proved by the finding of portions of the Old Saxon poem. **Genesis B** probably dates from the ninth century; **Genesis A** is usually assigned to the beginning of the eighth. The following selection, **Satan’s Address to his Followers**, sometimes called **The Fall of the Angels**, ll. 338–441 of the whole poem, is taken from **Genesis B**.


The following text is taken from the manuscript. Grein-Wülker, Krapp, and Klaeber have been consulted.

**SATAN'S ADDRESS TO HIS FOLLOWERS**

\[\text{pæ spræc sê ofermōda cyning, þe ær wæs englæ sceynost, uwtost on heofne and his Hærran lēof, Drihtne dýre, òþ him to dole wurdon,} \]
řæt him for gālscipe God sylfa wearð
mihtig on möde yrre, wearp hine on řæt morðer innan,
niðer on řæt niobedd, and scæop him naman siddan,
cwæð sē hēhsta hātan sceolde
Sātan siddan, hēt hine řære sweartan helle
grundes gūman, nalles wið God winnan. ¹
Sātan maðelode, sorgiende spræc —
sē ře helle forð healdan sceolde,
gleman ōes grundes, wæs ŋær Godes engel
hwit on heofne, ō ĕ hine his hyge ferspēon
and his ofermētto ealra swīðost,
řæt hē ne wolde wereda Drihtnæs
word wurðian. Weoll him on innan
hyge ymb his heortan, hāt wæs hīm ŋutan
.wrāðlic wite; hē řa worde cwæð:
"Is řēs ñega styde ungēlic swīðē
Ŕām ðūrum ře wē ŋær cwēðon,
heån on heofonrice, ře mē mīn hearra onlāg,
řēah wē hine for řām Alwaldan āgan ne mōston,
rōmīgan ūres rīces. Naefū hē řēah riht gedōn
řæt hē ţūs haefū befælled fyre tō botme,
helle řære hātan, heofonrice bēnumen,
hafāŋ hit gemearcod mid moncynne
tō gesettanne. Řæt mē is sorga mēst,
řæt Ādām sceal, ře ŋæs of eorðan geworht,
minne stronglican stōl behealdan,
wesan him on wynne, and wē řis wite bolien,
hearm on řisse helle. Wā lā āhte ic mīnra handa geweald,
and mōste āne tīd ōte weorðan,
wesan āne winterstunde, þonne ic mid þūs werode... ²

¹ MS. widnan.
ac licgað mē ymbe ırenbenda,
rideð racentan sāl. Ic com rīces lēas:
habbað mē swā hearde  helle clommus,
faeste befangen. Hēr is fyr miscel
ufan and neoðone: (ic ā ne gesēah
läðran landscipe); lig ne āswāmað
hāt ofer helle. Mē habbað hringa gespong,
sliðhearda sāl  sīdes āmyrred,
āfyrrred mē mīn fēcē; fēt synt gebundene,
handa gehāfete; synt þissa heldora
wegas forworhte; swā ic mid wihte ne mæg
of þissum lioðobendum. Licgað mē ymbe
heardes irenes  hāte geslægene
grindlas grēate, mid þy mē God hafað
gehāfetēd be þām healse. Swā ic wāt hē mīnne hīge cūðe
and þæt wîste ēac  weroda Drihten,
þæt sceolde unæ Ādāme  yfele gewurðan
ymb þæt heofonrice, þær ic āhte mînra handa geweald.
Ac Sōliāp wē nu þrēa on helle, þæt syndon þŷstro and hǣto,
grīmme, grundlēase; hafað ūs God sylfa
forswāpen on þās sweartan mistas. Swā hē ūs ne mæg ānīge
synne gestālæn,
þæt wē him on þām lande lāð gefremedon,  hē hæfð ūs þēah þās
lēōhte bescyrede,
beworpen on ealra wīta mǣste: ne magon wē þās wrace gefrem-
man,
gelēanian him mid lāðes wihtæ  þæt hē ūs hafað þās lēōhtes
bescyrede.
Hē hæfð nū gemearcød ānne middangeard, þær hē hæfð mon
geworhtne
æfter his onlicnesse,  mid þām hē wile eft gesettan
heofona rice mid hlüttrum sāulum. We þæs sculon hycgan
gorne, 
þæt wē on Ēdāne, gif wē æfre mægen, 
and on his eafrum swā some andan gebētan, 
onwendan him þær willan sīnes, gif wē hit mægen wihte āpen-
can. 
Ne gelyfe ic mē nū þæs lēohtes furfōr, þæs þē hē him þenceð 
lange niotan, 
þæs ēades mid his engla craefte; ne magon wē þæt on aldre 
gewinnan, 
þæt wē mihtiges Godes mōd onwēcen. Ûton oðwendan hit nū 
monna bearnum, 
þæt heofonrīce, nū wē hit habban ne mōton, gedōn þæt hie his 
hyldo forlāten, 
þæt hie þæt onwendon þæt hē mid his worde bebēad. Þonne 
weorc hē him wrāð on mōde, 
āhwet hie from his hyldo; þonne sculon hie þēs helle sēcan 
and þēs grimman grundas; þonne mōton wē hie ūs tō giongrum 
habban, 
fīra bearn on þissum fæstum clōmme. Onginnaþ nū ymb þā 
fyrdre þencean. 
Gif ic ēneggum þegne þēodenmādmas 
gēara forgēafe, þenden wē on þan gōdan rice 
gesēlige sætōn, and hæfdon ūre setla geweald, 
þonne hē mē nā on lēofran tīd lēanum ne meahte 
mīne gife gyldan, gif his ēm wolde 
mīnra þegna hwīle ēhāfa wurōan, 
þæt hē ūp heonon ūte mihte 
cuman þurh þēs clūstro, and hēafde craeft mid him 
þæt hē mid fecērhomān fīlōgan meahte, 
windan on wolcne, þær geworht stondāþ
Adam and Eve on eorðrice
mid welan bewunden, and wē synd ðworpene hider
on þas dēopan dalo. Nū hie Drihtne synt
wurðran micle and mōton him þone welan ǣgan,
þe wē on heofonrice habban sceoldon,
rice mid rihte: is sē rēd gescyred
monna cynne. þæt mē is on mínun mōde swā sār,
on mínun hyge hrēoweð, þæt hie heofonrice
ǣgan tū aldre! Gif hit ēower ēnung mēge
gewendon mid wihtē, þæt hie word Godes,
lāre forlāten; sōnā hie him þē lāðran bēoð.
Gif hie brecað his gebodscipe, þonne hē him ēbolgen wurðep; 435
siðan bið him sē wela onwended and wyrð hime wite gegeard, sum heard hearmscearu. Hycgað his ealle,
hū gē hī beswicen; siðan ic mē sēfte mēg
restan on þyssum racentum, gif him þæt rice losað.
Sē þē þæt gelǣstēð, him bið lēan gearo
æfter tū aldre þæs wē hērinne magon
on þyssum fyre forð fremena gewinnan:
sittan læte ic hine wið mē sylfne, swā hwā swā þæt secgan cymeð
on þās hātan helle, þæt hie Heofoncyninges
unwurðlice wordum and dādum
lāre...."
XIV

EXODUS

Exodus forms Cantos 42-49 of the poem in the manuscript Juniux XI. For a brief discussion of the poem and the manuscript see the prefatory note to the preceding selection. The following lines, 148-251, narrate the story of the marching of Pharaoh’s host, which is somewhat reminiscent of the Anglo-Saxon battle poems.

The Exodus has been edited by F. A. Blackburn, Exodus and Daniel, Heath, 1907. The following text is taken from the manuscript. Blackburn’s edition, with the Grein-Wülker Bibliothek, Vol. II, and Krapp’s edition of Juniux XI have been consulted.

THE MARCHING OF PHARAOH’S HOST

Wæron heaðowylmas heortan getenge, 156
mihtmōd wera, mānum trēowum.
Woldon hie þæt feorhlēan fācne gyldan,
þætte hē þæt dægweorc drēore gebohte
Moyses lēode, þær him mihtig God
on ðām spildsīde spēde forgēfe.
Þā him eorla mōd ortrýwe weardē
sēðan hie gesāwon of sēðwēgum
fyrd Faraōnis forð ongangan,
oferholt wegan, ēored līxan
(gāras trymedon, gūḍ hwearfode,
blicon bordhreōcan, bŷman sungon),
þūfas þunian, þēod mearc tredan.
On hwæl hrēopon therefugolā
hilde grǣdige, [hræſen gōl,

1 MS. hwreopan, with o written over a.
EXODUS 241

dēawigfeðere, ofer drihtnēum,
wonn wælcēasega. Wulfas sungon
atol æfenlēoð āðes on wēnan,
carlēasan dēor cwylдрōf bēodan
on láðēra læst lēodmāgnes ful:
hrēopon mearcwērdas middum 1 nihtum,
flēah fǣge gāst, folc wæs gehāged.
Hwilum of þām werode wlanċe þēgnas 17c
māton milpaðas mēara bōgum.
Him þār segncyning wið þone sean foran,
manna þengel, mearcwērēte rād,
gūðweard gumena grīhelm gespēon,
cyning cinberge (cumbol līxtōn),
wīges on wēnum, hwælhlencan scēoc;
hēt his herecīste healdan georne
fāst syrdgetrum. Frēond on sigon
lāðum ēagan landmāna cyme.
Yṃb hine wāgon wigend unforhtē, 18c
hāre heorawulfas hilde ērētton,
burstige þrācwīges ðēodenholde.
Hāfde him ālesen lōoda dugeðē
tirēadigra twā þūsendo,
þæt wāron cyningas and cnēowoṃagās,
on þæt ēade riht, æþelum deore.
For Pedido ānra gehwilc ùt ālēdde
wæpnedcynnes wigan ēghwilcne
þāra þe hē on þām fyrste findan mihte.
Wāron inge men ealle aṭgādēre 19c
cyningas on corīre. Cūt oft gebād
horn on hēape tō hwēs hēgstealdmen,

1 MS. midum, with second d inserted above line.
gūþþrēat gūmena, gearwe bærōn.
Swā þær eorp werod ęcan læddon;
lǣð æfter læðum, lædmægnes worn,
þūsendmǣlum þider wǣrōn fūse.
Hœfdon hie gemynted tō þām mægenhēapum
 tō þām Ærdēage Æsrahēla cynn
bīllum ābrēotan on hyra brōðorgylm,
for þon wæs in wicum wōp āp āhafen,
atol ǣfenlēō, egesan stōdon,
weredon wælnet. Ƿā sē wōma cwōm
flugon frēcne spel; fēond wæs ānmod,
erwed wæs wigblāc, Ƿā ðat wランス forsēaf
mihtig engel Ƿā ðā menigeo behēold,
þat þær gelǣðe mid him leng ne mihto
geśeōn tōsomne, sīð wæs ādǣled.
Hœfde nīdfara nihtlangne fyrst
þēah cē him on healfa gehwām āhtend seomeden,
mægen Ƿāðe meresrēam. Nāhton māran hwyrft,
wǣrōn orwēnan ðēelrihtes,
ǣðon æfter beorgum in blǣcum rēafum
wēān on wēnum, wǣccende bāð
eall sēo sibgedriht somod Ætgaedere
māran mægenes, Ƿā Moyses bebēad
eorlas on úhttīd ārnum bēnum
folc somnīgean, frecan ārisan,
habban heora hlencan, hycgan on ellen,
beran beorht searo, bēacnum cīgean
swēōt sande nēar. Snelle gemundon
weardas wīglēō, werod wæs gefyȳed.
Brūdon ofer burgum (bỳman gehyrдон)
flotan feldhūsum, fyrd wæs on ofste.
Siððan he getealdon wið þám tēonhete on þám forðherge féðan twelfe mōde rōfa, mægen wæs onhrēred. Wæs on ánra gehwām æðelan cynnes ñlesen under lindum lēoda duguðe on folcgetæl fiftig cista, hæfde cista gehwile cūðes werodes garberendra, guðfremmendra X hund geteled tīrēadigra. Þæt wæs wīglic werod; wāc ne grētton in Þæt rincgetæl rōswan herges, þā þe for geoguðe gūt ne mihton under bordhrēoðan brēostnet wera wið flāne ðeōnd folmum werigean, ne him bealubenne gebiden hæfdon ofer linde lærig, licwunde swōr, gylpplegan gāres. Gamele ne mōston, hāre heaðorincas, hilde onfēon, gif him mōdhēapum mægen swiðrāde, ac hīe be wæstum wið cyron, hū in lēodscepe lēstan wolde mōd mid ārān, ēac þan mægnes craf gārbēames fēng þā wæs handrōfra here setgēedere, fūs forðwegas. Fana ēp rād, bēama beorhtost; buton ealle þā gēn hwonne siðboda sæstrēamum nēah lēoht ofer lindum lyftedoras brēc.
THE Christ is the first and longest poem in the Exeter Book. It is one of the four poems authoritatively ascribed to Cynewulf on the basis of the passages in each in which a sequence of runes forms his name. The material of the Christ may be divided into three main parts, the first dealing with the Advent of Christ, the second with His Ascension, and the third with the Day of Judgment. Scholars have differed greatly as to the precise length of each of these divisions, as to whether they are three separate poems or three parts of one poem, and as to just how much of the poem Cynewulf wrote. The late Professor A. S. Cook, who made the most elaborate study of the Christ, believed that the three form part of one whole, of which the sole author is Cynewulf.

The passages given below are the dramatic dialogue between Joseph and Mary before the birth of Christ (ll. 164–213) and the Runic passage in which Cynewulf gives his name (ll. 797–814). The text is taken from the unique manuscript of the poem. Golłancz's edition of the first part of the Exeter Book for the Early English Text Society, 1895 (No. 104), A. S. Cook's The Christ of Cynewulf, Ginn, 1900, and the Grein-Wülker Bibliothek, Vol. III, have been consulted. A photostatic copy of the Exeter Book with introductory chapters by R. W. Chambers, Max Förster, and Robin Flower, was published for the Dean and Chapter of Exeter Cathedral by Percy Lund, Humphries and Company, London, in 1933.

I. DIALOGUE BETWEEN MARY AND JOSEPH

"Ēalā Iōsēph mīn,  Iācōbes bēarn,  
mēg Dāuīdes  mēran cyninges,

\(^1\) For a brief description of the Exeter Book see supra, p. 226.
CYNEWULF'S CHRIST

nū þū frēode scealt fæste gedālan,  
ālētan lufan mine!"

"Ic lungre eam  
dēope gedrēfed, dōme berēafod,  
forōn ic worn for þē worde hābbe  
sidra sorga and sārcwīda  
hearmes gehēred, and mē hosp sprecað,  
tornworda felā. Ic tēras sceal  
gēotan gēomormōd. God ēape mēg  
gehālan hygesorge heortan minre,  
āfrēran fēasceafne. Ėalā fēmne geong,  
mēgō Maria!"

"Hwæt bemurnest ūð,  
cleopast cearigende? Ne ic culpan in þē,  
incan ēnigne æfre onfunde,  
womma geworhtra; and þū þā word spricest  
swā þū sylfa sie synna gehwylcre  
firena gefylled."

"Ic tō fela hēbbe  
þēs byrdscypes bealwa onfongen.  
Hū mēg ic ēadigan lāpān sprece,  
oþe andswāræ ēnige findan  
wrēpum tōwiðere? Is þēt wide cūð  
þet ic of þām torhtan temple Dryhtnes  
onfēng frēolice fēmnan clāne,  
womma lēase, and nū gehwyrfeð is  
þurh nāthewylces. Mē nāwpēr dēag,  
sēce ne swige. Gif ic sóð sprece,  
þonne sceal Dāuídes dohtor sweltan,  
stānum āstyrfeð. Gēn strengre is  
þēt ic morþor hele: scyle mānswara
lab lēoda gehwām lifgan sīþan, fracoþ in folcum."

"Sōð ic sege þurh Sunu Meotudes, gāsta Gēocend, þæt ic gēn ne conn þurh gemæscipe monnes òwer ðinges on eorðan; ac mē ēaden wearð geongre in geardum, þæt mē Gabrihēl, heofones hēagengel, hālo gebodade, sægede sōðlice þæt mē swegles Gāst lēoman onlīhte; sceolde ic lifes ðrym geberan, beorhtne Sunu, Bearn ēacen Godes, torhtes Tirfruman.1 Nū ic his tempel eam gefremed būtan fācne; in mē frōfre Gāst geardode. Nū þū ealle forlāt sāre sorgceare. Saga ðene þonc mērum Meotodes Sunu þæt ic his mōdor gewearð, fāmne forð sē-þēah, and þū fæder cweden worulcund bi wēne; sceolde witedōm in him sylfum bēon sōðe gefylled."

II. RUNIC PASSAGE

"Ponne ð₁ cwacæð, gehyrēð Cyning mǣðlan, rodēra Ryhtend, sprecan rēþe word þām þē him ēr in worulde wāce hýrdon, þendan þ₃ and ð₁ yþast meahtan frōfre findan. þær seal forht monig on þām wongstede wērīg bidan hwæt him after dēdum dēman wille"

1 MS. tir-fruma; em. by Thorpe.
wrābra wīta. Brih sē þ sceacen
eorðan frætwa. ða was longe
Þ flōdum bilocen, lifwynna dāl,
Þ on foldan. ðonne frætwe sculon
byrnan on bæle; blāc rāsetteð
recen rēda lēg, rēbe scripēð
geond worulde wide. Wongas hrēosāð,
burgstede berstāð. Brond bið on tyhte;
ǣleð ealdgestēon unmurnlice
gēsta gifrast, þæt gēo guman hēoldan,
benden him on eorðan onmēðla wæs.